This revised and extended edition of the best-selling COLLOQUIAL CHINESE is the ideal introduction to the language.

Specially written by an experienced teacher and native speaker for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to modern spoken Mandarin Chinese. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes COLLOQUIAL CHINESE your best choice in personal language learning?

- dialogues and vocabulary sections given in characters and pinyin romanization
- introduction to the art of writing Chinese characters
- full English translations of all dialogues
- Chinese–English and English–Chinese glossaries

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Chinese in a broad range of everyday situations.

Two 60-minute cassettes (or CDs) are available to accompany COLLOQUIAL CHINESE. Recorded by native speakers, they will help you perfect your pronunciation, listening and speaking skills.

Kan Qian teaches in Oriental Studies at the University of Cambridge. She is the author of the COLLOQUIAL CHINESE CD-ROM.

The Colloquial Series

Series adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

*Afrikaans
*Albanian
*Amharic
Arabic (Levantine)
Arabic of Egypt
Arabic of the Gulf
and Saudi Arabia
Basque
*Breton
Bulgarian
*Cambodian
*Cantonese
*Catalan
*Chinese
*Croatian and Serbian
*Czech
*Danish
*Dutch
*English
*Estonian
*Finnish
*French
*German
*Greek
Gujarati
*Hebrew
*Hindi
*Hungarian
*Icelandic
*Indonesian

*Italian
*Japanese
*Korean
*Latvian
*Lithuanian
*Malay
*Mongolian
*Norwegian
*Panjabi
*Persian
*Polish
*Portuguese
*Portuguese of Brazil
*Romanian
*Russian
*Scottish Gaelic
*Slovak
*Slovene
*Somali
*Spanish
*Spanish of Latin America
*Swarthi
*Swedish
*Tamil
*Thai
*Turkish
*Ukrainian
*Urdu
*Vietnamese
*Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) (*and CDs) are available for all the above titles. They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc, 29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001, USA.

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs
Multimedia Language Courses
Available in: Chinese, French, Portuguese and Spanish
Acknowledgements

My gratitude goes to Andrew Brown, who has helped me throughout the writing of this book. Not only did he spend many hours polishing my English, but also put himself in the position of a learner for this book. The criticism and comments he made were extremely helpful in enabling me to search for the most appropriate way of expressing many language points. I am also very grateful to Matthew Crabbe, who gave me some very good and useful suggestions.

My special thanks go to Charles Forsdick, Dr Rachel Rimmershaw and Lucia Woods, who willingly gave hours of their time polishing some of the chapters and provided very useful comments. I am indebted to Dr Yip Po-Ching for his many helpful suggestions. I would also like to thank Alan Edmunds, Jonathan Culpeper, Wu Zhongtao, Dong Ming, Dr Mick Short and Li Man for their help in one way or another. Finally, I wish to thank the editors and the assistant staff concerned at Routledge for their constructive comments and support.
Contents

Introduction

1 Chū cì jiànmìan
   Meeting someone for the first time

2 Xíngmíng, guójì hé niánlíng
   Name, nationality and age

3 Zài gōngsī de jùhuì shāng
   At a company party

4 Wèn shíjiān
   Asking the time

5 Jiārén hé péngyou
   Family and friends

6 Rìqí hé tiānqì
   The date and the weather

7 Mǎi dōngxi (I)
   Shopping (I)

8 Mǎi dōngxi (II)
   Shopping (II)

9 Zài cānguǎn
   At the restaurant

10 Wèn lù
   Asking for directions

11 Mǎi qīché piào hé huówéi piào
   Buying bus and train tickets

12 Zài fàndiàn
   At the hotel
The Chinese language

Some people in the west think that the Chinese language is Cantonese whereas in fact Cantonese is just one of the eight major dialects of the Chinese language. Although different dialects differ immensely in pronunciation, they share the same written form. The Northern dialect (which has many sub-dialects under it) is spoken by 70 per cent of the Chinese population. Therefore, the standard language spoken nationally is based on the pronunciation of the Northern dialect. The name for this standard form is Putonghua (common speech) in mainland China, Guoyu or Huayu (national language) in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and other overseas Chinese communities, and 'Mandarin Chinese' in English-speaking countries. Other terms such as Zhongwen (Chinese) or Hanyu ('Han' language, Han Chinese making up 93 per cent of the Chinese population) are more formal and are often used among Chinese language learners. Native Chinese speakers often use the term 'Zhongwen' rather than Putonghua when they ask non-native Chinese speakers if they speak Chinese. Putonghua is taught in schools and spoken by television and radio presenters in mainland China, and it is the kind of spoken language which is most understood by Chinese speakers. This book deals with Putonghua.

Romanization

Various systems have been devised for transcribing Chinese sounds into the Latin script. The system used in this book is called pinyin. Pinyin was adopted as the official system in the People’s Republic of China in 1958, and has since become a standard form used by news agencies as well as educational institutions. Pinyin
has now been adopted almost universally in the west for transliterating Chinese personal names and place names although in older books you may still find earlier romanization systems in use (e.g. 'Beijing' is the pinyin transliteration and Peking is the Wade-Giles transliteration). In mainland China, pinyin is used as a tool to teach the correct pronunciation of Putonghua to children starting school. In dictionaries pinyin is given next to the character to indicate the pronunciation. Many street signs in big cities in mainland China have pinyin directly underneath the Chinese characters.

The speech sounds

Chinese is a vowel-dominated language. A syllable may consist of a single vowel, a compound vowel or a vowel preceded by a consonant. A compound vowel may consist of two vowels or a vowel with a nasal sound, which is treated as one unit. This is probably why consonants are called 'initials' (shengmu) and vowels are called 'finals' (yunmu) in Chinese. Every syllable is represented by a Chinese character. For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e} & \quad \text{hungry} & \text{ai} & \quad \text{to love} \\
\text{ke} & \quad \text{to be thirsty} & \text{tang} & \quad \text{sugar}
\end{align*}
\]

1 Initials

There are twenty-three initials (some people regard w and y as semi-vowels), in modern Chinese. Below is a table comparing the twenty-three initials with the English sounds. Some of the Chinese initials are quite similar to English sounds, others less so. Those which differ significantly from the nearest English sounds have explanations next to them. The letter in bold is the Chinese initial:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Initial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{b}</td>
<td>\text{b} in \text{bed}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{p}</td>
<td>\text{p} in \text{poor}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{m}</td>
<td>\text{m} in \text{me}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{zh}</td>
<td>\text{j} in \text{jade}, but with the tongue further back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{ch}</td>
<td>\text{ch} in \text{church}, but with the tongue further back, and the mouth in a round shape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{sh}</td>
<td>\text{sh} in \text{sheep}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{f}</td>
<td>\text{f} in \text{foot}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{d}</td>
<td>\text{d} in \text{do}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{t}</td>
<td>\text{t} in \text{tea}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{n}</td>
<td>\text{n} in \text{noose}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{l}</td>
<td>\text{l} in \text{like}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{z}</td>
<td>\text{z} in \text{beds}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{c}</td>
<td>\text{c} in \text{bits}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{r}</td>
<td>\text{r} in \text{road}, but with the tongue loosely rolled in the middle of the mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{g}</td>
<td>\text{g} in \text{good}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{k}</td>
<td>\text{k} in \text{kite}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{h}</td>
<td>\text{h} in \text{hat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{w}</td>
<td>\text{w} in \text{we}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{y}</td>
<td>\text{y} in \text{yes}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{q}</td>
<td>\text{q} in \text{George}, but with the tongue nearer the teeth and the mouth relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{x}</td>
<td>\text{x} – place the front of the tongue behind the lower front teeth near the hard palate then let the air pass through the channel between the front of the tongue and the hard palate, rather like whistling through the lower teeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Finals

A final is a single vowel, or compound vowel or a vowel plus a nasal sound, i.e. \text{n} (like \text{n} in \text{in}) and \text{ng} (like \text{ng} in \text{long}). Altogether, there are thirty-six finals in Chinese. Below is a chart comparing the thirty-six finals with the English sounds. Some of the Chinese final sounds are quite similar to English sounds, others less so. Those that bear no resemblance have explanations next to them. The letters in bold are the Chinese finals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final</th>
<th>Final</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{a}</td>
<td>\text{a} in \text{father}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{ai}</td>
<td>\text{a between} \text{a} and \text{ei}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{ao}</td>
<td>\text{ow} in \text{how}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{an}</td>
<td>\text{an} in \text{ban}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{ang}</td>
<td>\text{on} in \text{monster}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{e}</td>
<td>\text{ir} in \text{Sir}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{ei}</td>
<td>\text{ay} in \text{lay}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{en}</td>
<td>\text{en} in \text{tender}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{eng}</td>
<td>\text{un} in \text{hunger}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{er}</td>
<td>\text{combination of} \text{ir} in \text{Sir} and the retroflex \text{r} (\text{er} is never preceded by initials)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\text{d} like \text{d} in \text{do} 
\text{g} like \text{g} in \text{good} 
\text{k} like \text{k} in \text{kite} 
\text{h} like \text{h} in \text{hat} 
\text{w} like \text{w} in \text{we} 
\text{y} like \text{y} in \text{yes} 
\text{q} – raise the front of the tongue to the hard palate, place the tip of the tongue against the back of the lower teeth. It is a bit like the \text{ch} in \text{cheese} but with the tongue further forward. The mouth is held more firmly than when pronouncing \text{j}.
\text{x} – place the front of the tongue behind the lower front teeth near the hard palate then let the air pass through the channel between the front of the tongue and the hard palate, rather like whistling through the lower teeth.
i like ee in bee (after initials such as b, p, d, t, l, etc.)

when i follows initials z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r, it is pronounced very differently from i preceded by b, p, d, t, l, etc. Try to get the initial sound right first and then keep the mouth shape of the initial and say i. Note that this i sound and the initial overlap greatly)

ia - combination of i and a

iao like eow in meow

ie like ye in yesterday

iu like you

ian - like the Japanese currency word Yen

in like in in

iang like young

iong - combination of i and ong

(u is not preceded by other initials at the beginning of a syllable, y replaces i, e.g. yan instead of ian, yao instead of iao)

o like our in tour

ou like oe in toe

ong like ong in ding-dong

u like oo in too

ua - combination of u and a

uo like war

uai - combination of u and ai

ui like wai in wait

uan like wan in swan

un like won in wonder

uang like wan in wanting

(u is not preceded by other initials at the beginning of a syllable, w replaces u, e.g. wan instead of uan, wo instead of uo)

ü like u in tu (French)

üe - combination of ü and a short ei

tian - combination of ü and a short an

in like 'une' in French

(u follows j, q, x and y, it is written as u without the two dots over it (but still pronounced as ü), e.g. ju, qu, xu, yun, yuan, etc. because u cannot occur after j, q, x and y)

Although the above two charts should give you some guidance over the pronunciation, the recording is essential if you wish to achieve a more accurate pronunciation of these sounds.

Tones

Chinese is a tone language. In Putonghua, there are four tones, five if you include the neutral tone. Since there are only about 400 basic monosyllables which can be combined to make words in Chinese, the use of tones is one way of substantially increasing the number of available monosyllables. Every syllable in isolation has its definite tone. So syllables with different tones may mean different things although they share the same initial and final. For example: ma pronounced with the first tone means ‘mother’ but ma pronounced with the third tone means ‘horse’.

1 The four tones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pitch-graph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The first tone</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The second tone</td>
<td>'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The third tone</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The fourth tone</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To illustrate these four tones better, let us first draw a short vertical line to represent the pitch variation within an average person’s voice range:

- 5 the high pitch
- 4 the mid-high pitch
- 3 the middle pitch
- 2 the mid-low pitch
- 1 the low pitch

First tone is a high, level tone. Pitch it at 5 and keep it at the same level for a while. It will look something like this in the pitch diagram:
Second tone is a high, rising tone. Pitch it at about 3 and raise it quickly. It will look something like this in the pitch diagram:

Third tone is a falling and rising tone. Start below 3 and let it drop nearly to the bottom and then rise to somewhere near 2.5. It looks something like this in the pitch diagram:

Fourth tone is a falling tone. It falls from 5 right to the bottom, 1. It looks something like this in the pitch diagram:

Tones are marked over the vowel (e.g. tā) or over the main vowel (e.g. táo). The main vowel is the one that comes earliest in this list: a, o, e, u, i, ü. Whenever there is no mark over the vowel, the syllable is a neutral tone.

2 Neutral tones

Some syllables in Chinese are in the neutral tone or toneless, i.e. they are pronounced weakly, which is like unstressed syllables in English (e.g. of in one of my friends). If there is no tone mark over the vowel, it means it is a neutral tone. Neutral tones are used in the following cases:

(a) Grammar words such as le, de (see ‘Word, word order and grammar’ below)
(b) The second syllable in some compound words: for example, wōmen (we/us)
(c) A second syllable which is a repetition of the first one: for example, māma (mother/mum)
(d) The measure word ge when it is not emphasized: for example, sàn ge yuè (three months) (see ‘Word, word order and grammar’ for ‘measure word’ below).

3 Tone change

In connected speech, tones change depending on the adjacent tones and meaning groups. Below are some basic rules of the tone change:

(a) When a third tone is followed by another third tone and they are in one meaning group, the first one changes to the second tone. For example, nǐ, hǎo, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Nǐ hǎo (Hello).

(b) When three third tones occur one after another and they are in one meaning group, the second one changes to the second tone whilst the other two remain the third tone. For example, wō, hěn, hǎo, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Wō hěn hǎo (I'm very well).

(c) In some compound words, although the second syllable, which is a third tone when used separately, has become neutral, it still carries enough weight to change the preceding third tone to the second tone. For example, xiǎo, jié, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Xiǎojie (Miss).
For example: xīngqìyì consists of three syllables and is represented by three characters: 星期一

It means ‘Monday’. In some books, a space is always inserted between two syllables. For example:

Jīn tiān shì xīng qì yì. Today is Monday.

In this book, for the convenience of English speakers, I have put those syllables together which can be translated into one English word. The above sentence in this book would be written as follows:

Jīntiān shì xīngqìyì. Today is Monday.

2 Word order

In English, when you ask a question, you have to put the question word first, and reverse the order of the verb and the noun (e.g. Where are you going?). In Chinese, you use the normal word order and say ‘You are going where?’. In English, one tends to put the most important information at the end of a sentence (e.g. It is very expensive to telephone China). In Chinese, the important information or the topic of a sentence comes first. Thus you say ‘To telephone China very expensive.’ In English, time phrases such as at 6 o'clock, tomorrow, occur at the end of a sentence (e.g. I'll finish my work at 6 o'clock). In Chinese, time phrases always occur before the verb. Thus you say ‘I 6 o'clock finish work.’ These are just a few major differences between English and Chinese in terms of word order. There are many other differences between the two languages which will be dealt with later in the book.

3 Grammar

Chinese grammar is still in the process of being perfected. However, there are a few things you need to know before you start learning Chinese:

(a) Nouns in Chinese are neither singular nor plural. Thus you say ‘one book’ and ‘three book’.
(b) Because of (a) above, verbs (i.e. doing words) have only one form. Thus you say ‘I be Chinese’ and ‘You be British’, ‘I go China’ and ‘He go China’, etc.
Verbs do not indicate past, present or future. Tenses are indicated by extra grammar words (or ‘particles’), time phrases or context. Thus you say ‘I go + grammar word + library’, ‘I yesterday go + grammar word + library’, ‘I tomorrow go library’, etc.

Prepositions such as ‘at’, ‘in’, ‘on’ are not used before time phrases. Thus you say ‘My mother Tuesday arrive.’

The largest unit, be it time or place, always comes first. Thus you say ‘He January the 11th arrive’, ‘We from China Beijing come’, etc.

There is something called the measure word to be used between a number and a noun. Different measure words are used for different nouns. Thus you say two + ben + book, but two + ge + people.

There is a grammar summary at the end of the book.

### Chinese characters

Chinese characters are symbols used to represent the Chinese language. It is widely believed that written Chinese is amongst the world's oldest written languages. Its earliest written records can be traced back 3,500 years. Many of the earliest writings were pictures carved on oracle bones, known as ‘pictographs’. Over the years, Chinese characters evolved from pictographs into characters formed of strokes, with their structures becoming systemized and simpler. Below are five different character styles showing the evolution of the characters for the sun and the moon into their present-day form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Styles</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Moon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>甲骨文</td>
<td>简体</td>
<td>☀️</td>
<td>🌃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>金文</td>
<td>罗体</td>
<td>☀️</td>
<td>🌃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>隶书</td>
<td>简体</td>
<td>☀️</td>
<td>🌃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>楷书</td>
<td>罗体</td>
<td>☀️</td>
<td>🌃</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The total number of Chinese characters is estimated at more than 50,000, of which only 5,000–8,000 are in common use. And only 3,000 of them are used for everyday purposes.

### 1 Basic strokes

Most characters are made of two or more basic structural components (some character components can stand by themselves). These character components are limited and the basic strokes which form these components are even more limited. A stroke is a single unbroken line drawn by the writer from the time the pen touches the paper until the pen lifts off the paper. Below are the basic strokes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stroke</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Héng</td>
<td>Heng</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>From left to right (→)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shù</td>
<td>Shu</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>From top to bottom (↓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diān</td>
<td>Dian</td>
<td>Left-falling</td>
<td>From right to bottom left (↙)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Piě</td>
<td>Piel</td>
<td>Left-falling</td>
<td>From left to bottom right (↘)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nà</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Right-falling</td>
<td>From top left to bottom right (↗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tí</td>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>Rising</td>
<td>From bottom left to top right (↗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gōu</td>
<td>Gou</td>
<td>Hook</td>
<td>Various hooks, all made by bringing the pen downward first then adding a hook (some are made quickly and others are made slowly) (↙↖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhé</td>
<td>Zhe</td>
<td>Turning</td>
<td>Various turnings, all made with a left to right stroke that turns downward at the end (some are made quickly and others are made slowly) (↙↘)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Based on the above basic strokes, there are many other combinations such as:

- **héngpiě wāngōu**
  (horizontal plus left-falling plus slanting vertical hook),

- **héngzhégōu**
  (horizontal plus turning hook),

- **shuwāngōu**
  (vertical plus top-turn),

- **shúzhézhédōu**
  (vertical plus horizontal plus vertical hook),

- **héngzhédēpiě**
  (horizontal turning, and another turning plus left-falling), etc.

## 2 Rules of stroke order

The chart below shows the rules regarding stroke order in writing Chinese characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Stroke order</th>
<th>Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>十人</td>
<td>— 十人</td>
<td>First horizontal, then vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>三儿</td>
<td>— 三</td>
<td>First left-falling, then right-falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>问国</td>
<td>— 国</td>
<td>First top, then bottom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>小</td>
<td>— 小</td>
<td>First left, then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>First outside, then inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Finish inside, then close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Middle, then left, then right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 3 Radicals

Most of the modern Chinese characters are formed of two components: one is called the ‘radical’ (known as 部首 bùshǒu ‘common heads’ in Chinese), indicating the classification of the character, and the other is called the phonetic, providing a clue to its pronunciation. The radical can be the left part, the right part, the top part or the bottom part. For example

- 马 mā (horse)
  is a character in its own right but it is the phonetic for characters such as

- 妈 mā (mother),

- 骂 mā (to swear),

- 蚂蚁 máyǐ (ant).

Let us look at the radicals for these three mas:

- 马 mā horse
- 妈 mā the woman radical
- 骂 mā two mouths on top
- 蚂蚁 máyǐ the insect radical

Overleaf is a table of some most commonly used radicals:
When in isolation  When in combination  Meaning  Example

人 人  people  他 tā he
水 水  water  汤 táng, soup
冰 冰  ice  冰 bīng, ice
火 火  fire  热 rèn, hot
家 家  home  家 jiā, home
金 金  metal  钱 qián, money
心 心  heart  想 dǎng, to understand
言 言  speech  说 shuō, to speak
食 食  abundant  都 dōu, all
山 山  cliff  陡 dǒu, steep
山 山  step  很 hěn, very
狗 狗  dog  狗 gǒu, dog
女 女  hand  找 zhǎo, to look for
爪 爪  to tap/to knock  手 shǒu, to receive
手 手  hand/claws  恋 ài, to love
草 草  grass  茶 chá, tea
食 食  food  饭 fàn, food
示 示  sign/ceremony  礼 lǐ, virtue
示 示  advance  远 yuǎn, far
王 王  clothes  裙 qún, skirt
王 王  illness  疼 téng, painful
女 女  woman  妈 mā, mother
火 火  fire  灯 dēng, light
足 足  foot  跟 gēn, to follow
立 立  to stand  站 zhàn, to stand
土 土  soil  地 dì, floor/earth
王 王  king  球 qiú, ball
心 心  heart  心 xīn, to think
木 木  tree  林 lín, forest
目 目  eye/sight  眼 yǎn, eye

About 2,000 characters have been simplified in mainland China since the founding of the People's Republic so as to improve the literacy of the population. These 2,000 characters are called 'simplified characters' as opposed to 'complex characters' (also known as 'traditional form'). 'Complex characters' are still used in Hong Kong, Taiwan and other overseas Chinese communities. In this book, emphasis is laid on simplified characters.

Structure of this book

There are fifteen lessons in total. The lesson objectives are listed at the beginning of each lesson so that you know exactly what is expected of you. Each of the first fourteen lessons contains two situational dialogues. Lesson 15 has only one text, which takes the form of a personal letter. Most lessons have a character section which describes how to write some commonly used characters and sets out some character exercises. From Lesson 4 onwards character dialogues appear after the pinyin text and characters are also given next to pinyin in the vocabulary. It does not mean that you must learn characters at the same time. The choice is yours. Important language points which occur in each dialogue/text are explained with more examples in the 'Notes to dialogue/text' section. At the end of each lesson, there is a reading/listening comprehension section which reinforces what has been introduced earlier. There are also exercises in each lesson.

Lessons 1-3: These dialogues and vocabulary are in pinyin. After each dialogue, there is an idiomatic English translation of the dialogue and the vocabulary.
Lessons 4–5: Each dialogue is first in pinyin, then in character. After each dialogue, there is an idiomatic English translation of the dialogue. The vocabulary is in pinyin and character.

Lessons 6–15: These dialogues and vocabulary are in pinyin and character. However, there is no idiomatic English translation of each dialogue. You can find the English translation of those dialogues in Appendix D.

The key to all the exercises and the answers to the questions in the reading/listening comprehension in each lesson are given at the end of the book.

Finally, there are two points about the symbols used in the book: (a) the abbreviation ‘lit.’ means ‘literal meaning’; and (b) the apostrophe (‘) is used to separate two syllables whenever there may be a confusion over the syllable boundary (e.g. qín’ài – n belongs to the first syllable not the second).

1 Chū cì jiànmíànn
Meeting someone for the first time

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- say who you are
- greet people and respond to greetings
- ask, and respond to, some yes/no questions
- use some appropriate forms of address
- write your first Chinese characters

Dialogue 1

Nǐ hǎo How do you do?  [][]

David Jones has just arrived at Beijing Airport. His potential Chinese business partner, Wang Lin, is there to meet him.

WÀNG LIN: Nǐ shì Jones xiǎnsheng ma?
DAVID JONES: Shì de. Wǒ shì David Jones.
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Greetings

Ni hao (How do you do?/Hello) is the most common form of greeting in Chinese, which can be used at any time of the day. In response, the person being greeted replies by repeating Ni hao. Further greeting expressions will appear throughout the book. Note that whenever a third tone (e.g. ni) precedes another third tone (e.g. hao), the first third tone is changed to a second tone. Thus it should be pronounced Ni hao... not Ni hao.

2 Names and forms of address

In Chinese, names always appear in the following order: surname, first name, title (when used). For example:

Wang Lin - Wang is the surname, and Lin is the first name;
Deng Xiaoping - Deng is the surname, and Xiaoping is the first name.

Colleagues and friends address each other either by full name (surname + first name) or by putting lao (old) or xiao (young/little) in front of the surname depending on the relative age and seniority of the speaker. For example:

A younger person (whose surname is Li) may address a colleague (whose surname is Zhang) who is in his/her fifties as Lao Zhang to show respect. Conversely, Lao Zhang can call this younger person Xiao Li.

Sometimes, lao is used as a friendly term among men even in their thirties and forties to address each other. First names are used among families and close friends.

Titles like xiansheng (Mr), niishi (Madam), xiaojie (Miss) are seldom used among Chinese people in mainland China since 1949; but recently, because of the increasing number of tourists and close links with the west, these titles are increasingly used in business and tourist circles. Professional titles such as jingli (manager), jiaoshou (professor), laoshi (teacher) are used as forms of address. When titles are used, first names are usually omitted. For example:

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ni</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì</td>
<td>be (am, is, are)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xìansiāng</td>
<td>Mr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu</td>
<td>[question word, see Note 5]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì de</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>I/me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎo</td>
<td>to be good/to be well/to be fine/good/fine/well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni hǎo</td>
<td>How do you do?/Hello [lit. 'you well']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hén</td>
<td>very</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎoxìng</td>
<td>to be pleased/to be happy/to be glad/happy/glad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiàndào</td>
<td>to meet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě</td>
<td>also/too</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiào</td>
<td>to call/to be called</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǎo</td>
<td>old/to be old</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bà</td>
<td>[grammar word, see Note 8]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎo de</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qǐng</td>
<td>please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huānyíng</td>
<td>to welcome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǎi</td>
<td>to come/to come to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó</td>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If someone is called Li Xinzi, and he/she is a teacher, this person can be addressed and referred to as Li láoshi (lit. ‘Li teacher’).

**3 Personal pronouns  wǒ and nǐ**

Personal pronouns wǒ (I/me) and nǐ (‘you’ singular) can be used both as the subject and the object. Note the positions in the sentence. The subject comes before the verb; the object comes after the verb. For example:

**Wǒ shì Wáng Lin.**

I am Wang Lin.

**Jiào wǒ Láo Wáng ba.**

Call me Lao Wang, please.

**Hén gǎoxìng jiàndào nǐ.**

Very pleased to meet you.

This rule applies to all other personal pronouns. Below is a full list of Chinese personal pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ</td>
<td>you (singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nín</td>
<td>you (polite form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he/she, him/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wómen</td>
<td>we, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nímen</td>
<td>you (plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you may have noticed, ‘he’ and ‘she’ share the same pronunciation (but are represented by different characters). To make plural personal pronouns (e.g. ‘we’, ‘you’ and ‘they’), simply add men to singular personal pronouns wǒ, nǐ and tā. On its own, mén has the second tone, but becomes toneless in wómen, nímen and tāmen.

**4 Sentences with shì**

One of the usages of shì (to be) sentences is to say who you are. For example:

**Wǒ shì Zhāng Ping.**

I am Zhang Ping.

**Tānmen shì Zhōngguó rén.**

They are Chinese.

**Tā shì láoshi.**

He/she is a teacher.

As we can see, the verb shì remains the same in the above three sentences, which makes things less complicated. Thus we have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wǒ</th>
<th>shì Zhōngguó rén.</th>
<th>I am Chinese.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ní</td>
<td>shì Zhōngguó rén.</td>
<td>You are Chinese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tá</td>
<td>shì Zhōngguó rén.</td>
<td>He/she is Chinese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wómen</td>
<td>shì Zhōngguó rén.</td>
<td>We are Chinese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nímen</td>
<td>shì Zhōngguó rén.</td>
<td>You are Chinese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tāmen</td>
<td>shì Zhōngguó rén.</td>
<td>They are Chinese.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5 Yes/no questions with ma**

To ask a yes/no question in Chinese (i.e. a question that demands the response ‘yes’ or ‘no’), all you need to do is to add ma at the end of a statement and speak with a rising tone as in English. There is no need to change the word order. For example:

**Statement**

**Ni shì Jones xiānshēng.**

You are Mr Jones.

**Yes/no question**

**Ni shì Jones xiānshēng ma?**

Are you Mr Jones?

**Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.**

He/she is Chinese.

**Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?**

Is he/she Chinese?

**6 Verb-adjectives**

In English, there are no verb-adjectives since adjectives can be preceded by the verb to be. However, in Chinese, some adjectives can incorporate the verb ‘to be’ and they become verb-adjectives. For example, the word láo is an adjective when it means ‘old’, but it is a verb-adjective when it means ‘to be old’. Note that the verb shì (to be) is not used in this case. When these verb-adjectives are used, they are usually modified by adverbs such as hén (very), tǐng (rather), etc. in front of them. Thus, we have:

**Tā tǐng láo.**

Lit. He/she rather be old.

She is rather old.

**Wǒ hén gǎoxìng.**

Lit. I very be happy.

I am very happy.
7 Use of qing

When the word qing (please) is used to invite someone politely to do something, as we saw in Dialogue 1, it is always placed at the beginning of a sentence/phrase. For example:

Qing lái Zhōngguó. Please come to China.
Qing jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. Please call me Lǎo Wáng.

8 Use of ba

This word does not have any specific meaning on its own; however, if you place it at the end of a sentence/phrase, it makes whatever you say sound friendly and casual. It can be broadly translated as 'please' in these contexts. The difference between the word ba and qing is that ba is placed at the end of sentences/phrases, and it is less formal. For example:

Jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng ba. Call me Lǎo Wáng, please.
Chī ba. Eat, please.

9 Adverb yě

The adverb yě (also) usually occurs before the phrase it modifies whether it is an adjective phrase or a verbal phrase. For example:

Wǒ yě shì Zhōngguórénn. Lit. I also be Chinese.
I am also Chinese.
Wǒ yě hěn gàoxìng jiàndeǎo nǐ. Lit. I also very be pleased meet you.
I'm also very pleased to meet you.

Note that when three third tones are together and they belong to the same meaning group, the first and the last third tones remain unchanged whilst the second third tone changes to the second tone. Thus wǒ yě hěn in the above sentence should be pronounced wǒ yě hěn.

10 Verb huányíng

If you want to say 'Welcome to China' in Chinese, you must use the structure 'Welcome you come to China'. Thus, we have Huányíng nǐ lái Zhōngguó.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Solve the problems:

(a) How many ways can you think of to address the following:
   (i) a man named Zhāng Gōngmín, manager, whom you have just met, and who is older than you;
   (ii) a woman named Lín Fāng, single, whom you have known for some time on a strictly business basis, and who is younger than you;
   (iii) a very close friend whose name is Gōng Qībīn, and who is younger than you.

(b) It is late in the evening, you bump into your colleague, Wáng Lín, and want to greet him. What do you say?

(c) If you meet a Chinese person for the first time, after the initial how-do-you-do greeting, what else can you say?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks:

(a) Wǒ ______ (to be) Tāng Píng.
(b) Wǒ hěn gàoxìng jiàndǎo ______ (her).
(c) A: Nǐ shí Wáng Lín ma?
   B: ______ (Yes).

Exercise 3

Turn the following statements into yes/no questions using ma:

(a) Nǐ shí Wáng xiānshēng.
(b) Tá (He/she) hěn gàoxìng jiàndǎo nǐ.
(c) Tāmen (They) lái Zhōngguó.
Exercise 4

Re-arrange the word order of the following three groups so that each group becomes a meaningful sentence:

(a) hên, yê, wô, jiândaô, gâoxîng, nî
(b) qîng, jiào, David, wô
(c) lâi, Zhôngguó, nî, huányîng

Dialogue 2

Nî lêî ma? Are you tired?

After their initial greetings, Lao Wang and David move on to talk about the trip.

LÀO WÂNG: Nîde yîlù shùnli ma?
DAVID: Hên shùnli, xièxiè.
LÀO WÂNG: Nî lêî ma?
DAVID: Yôu yîdiân lêî.
LÀO WÂNG: Nî xiàng hê yî bêî kâfeî ma?
DAVID: Tai xiàng le.
(later, inside the café)
LÀO WÂNG: Zhê shî nîde kâfeî, David.
DAVID: Xièxiè.
LÀO WÂNG: Bû kêqi.
LÀO WÂNG: Did you have a nice trip?
DAVID: Yes, very nice, thank you.
LÀO WÂNG: Are you tired?
DAVID: A little bit.
LÀO WÂNG: Would you like to have a coffee?
DAVID: That would be lovely.
(later, inside the café)
LÀO WÂNG: Here's your coffee, David.
DAVID: Thank you.
LÀO WÂNG: You're welcome.

Vocabulary

nîde your/yours
yîlù trip/journey [lit. 'one road' or 'whole way']
shùnli to be smooth

xièxiè thank you [lit. 'thank thank']
lêî to be tired
yôu yîdiân a little bit [lit. 'to have a little']
xiàng would like/to want [when followed by another verb]
hê to drink
yî one
yî bêî one cup/one glass
kâfeî coffee
tâi . . . le extremely/very much/too
zhê this
bû no/not
bû kêqi you are welcome [lit. 'not polite']

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Possessive pronouns (e.g. 'my', 'his', etc.)

Simply add de to the personal pronouns wô, nî, tâ, etc. to form possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives. In English, possessive adjectives are different from possessive pronouns (e.g. 'my' in front of nouns, and 'mine' at the end of the sentence). In Chinese, however, they are the same. For example:

Zhê shî wôde kâfeî. This is my coffee.
Zhê bêî kâfeî shi wôde. This coffee is mine.

You must also add de to a person's name to indicate the relationship between the person and an object. For example:

Zhê shî Xiào Li de kâfeî. This is Xiao Li's coffee.

Below is a comparison of Chinese and English possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possessive adjective</td>
<td>Possessive adjective</td>
<td>Possessive pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and pronoun</td>
<td>(in front of nouns)</td>
<td>(at the end of the sentence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wôde</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nîde</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tâde</td>
<td>his/her</td>
<td>his/hers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sometimes, de can be omitted. Thus we can say *Ni de yilu shunli ma?* or *Ni yilu shunli ma?* (Was your journey smooth?/Did you have a nice journey?). Please note that the word *de* is toneless.

12 Two verbs occurring in the same sentence

Whenever there are two or more verbs occurring in the same sentence or phrase, merely put them together. There is no link word 'to' to be used. Also remember that the verbs remain unchanged regardless of the pronoun as we saw earlier in Note 4. For example:

Wǒ xiǎng jiào Wáng Lin ‘Lào Wáng’.
I want to call Wang Lin ‘Lao Wang’.

Tā xiǎng hē yì bēi kǎfēi.
Lit. She would like drink one cup coffee.
She’d like to have a cup of coffee.

Note that the verb *xiǎng* means ‘to want’ or ‘would like to’ only when it precedes another verb.

13 Negation word *bù*

To negate a verb, verb-adjective or the adverb *hēn*, simply put *bù* in front of them. For example:

Wǒ *bù* shì Wáng Lin.
verb
Lit. I not be Wang Lin.
I am not Wang Lin.

Note that the word *bù* carries the fourth tone. However, when *bù* is followed by another fourth-tone word, it should be pronounced with the second tone.

Tā *bù* xiǎng lái Zhōngguó.
verb2 verb3
Lit. He not want come to China.
He doesn’t want to come to China.

14 Responding to questions ending with *ma*

In English, yes/no questions are so called because the answers to them almost always involve a *yes* or a *no*. However, in Chinese, *shì de* (yes) and *bù shì* (no) are not often used. They are definitely used if the verb *shì* is in the question. For example:

A: *Ni shì Jones xiānshēng ma?* A: Are you Mr Jones?
B: *Shì de.* B: Yes.
or *Bù shì.*
No.

When the verb *shì* is not in the question, usually the main verb/verb-adjective which occurs in the question is either repeated in the answer for ‘yes’ or negated for ‘no’. For example:

A: *Ni lèi ma?* A: Are you tired?
Lit. You be tired [yes/no question word]?
B: *Hēn lèi.* or *Bù lèi.* B: Yes, very tired/No.

A: *Ni xiǎng hē kǎfēi ma?*
Lit. You want drink coffee [yes/no question word]?
Would you like to have some coffee?
B: *Xǐāng, xièxiè.* or *Bù xiǎng, xièxiè.*
Lit. Want, thank thank. Not want, thank thank.
Yes, thank you. No, thank you.

Note, if you want to say ‘Yes, please’ in Chinese, add *xièxiè* (thank you), not *qǐng* (please), after the verb. The word *qǐng* is used for different purposes (see Note 7 above).
The word tāi by itself means 'too' (as in 'too sweet', for example). It has to be used in conjunction with le to mean 'extremely' or 'very much'. The word le does not mean anything by itself. Note that you need to put the adjective or the verb (sometimes a verbal phrase) you want to modify in between tāi and le. For example:

Tai hǎo le.  Extremely good.
Tai xiāng le.  I want it very much.
Wǒ tāi xiāng hē kāfēi le.  I'd very much like to have a coffee.

However, the word le is omitted when the negation word bù is used. For example:

Bù tāi lèi.  Not too tired.
Bù tāi shùnli.  Not too smooth.

Exercise 5

(i) Use the question word ma to ask Lǎo Wǎng whether:
(a) he is tired
(b) he is happy
(c) he would like to have a coffee

(ii) to pretend that you are Lǎo Wǎng, and answer the questions first in the positive and then in the negative.

Exercise 6

Complete the following exchanges:
(a) A: Nǐ hǎo.
   B: ________ (Hello).
(b) A: Xièxiè.
   B: ________ (You're welcome).
(c) A: Nǐ shì Wǎng Lín ma?
   B: ________ (Yes). Wǒ shì Wǎng Lín.

(d) A: Zhè shì nǐ de kāfēi ma?
   B: ________ (No). Zhè shì Lǎo Wǎng de.
(e) A: Nǐ xiāng hē kāfēi ma?
   B: ________ (Yes, please).

Exercise 7

Use the word bù to negate the following sentences:
(a) Lǎo Wǎng xiāng hē kāfēi. (Lǎo Wǎng does not want to have coffee.)
(b) Dādá hěn gāoxìng. (Dādá is not very happy.)
(c) Dādá hěn gāoxìng. (Dādá is very unhappy.)
(d) Wǒ de yìlì hěn shùnli. (My trip was not very smooth.)
(e) Wǒ de yìlì hěn shùnli. (My trip was very rough.)
(f) Tā shì Jones xiānshēng. (He is not Mr Jones.)

Exercise 8

When the question Nǐ lèi ma? is asked, how do you respond if you are:
(a) very tired
(b) a little bit tired
(c) not too tired

Exercise 9

Fill in the blanks:
(a) Zhè bù shì ______ (my) kāfēi. Zhè shì ______ (his) kāfēi.
(b) ______ (her) kāfēi bù tài hǎo.
(c) Zhè bù shì ______ (mine). Zhè shì ______ (Andrew's).

Characters

Learning to write Nǐ hǎo (hello) and Zhōngguó (China)

Now, you may wish to try writing (or drawing!) the greeting expression Nǐ hǎo in characters. When Chinese children start writing characters, they use square boxes, and every box has a cross in the middle. Look at the boxes below:
The purpose of the box is to help them get the size and the proportion of the character right, and the purpose of the cross is to help them position the character in the middle of the box. Let us see how the two characters for \textit{Ni hào} look like inside these boxes:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
ni & hào \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

It is a good idea to use these boxes when you first start writing characters. Let us now learn how to write \textit{Ni hào}, step by step. The first character \textit{ni} has seven strokes, which are written in the following order:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

The left part of \textit{ni} is called the 'person radical' because it looks rather like the character for 'person/people' (pronounced \textit{rén}). When \textit{rén} is written in a box, we have:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
人 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

The 'person radical' is used very often to form other characters, so you may wish to make a note of it.

The second character \textit{hào} has six strokes, which are written in the following order:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Now, let us take \textit{hào} apart. The left side \textit{女} by itself means 'woman/female' (pronounced \textit{nǚ}), and it is called the 'woman radical', and the right side \textit{子} is a formal word for 'son' (pronounced \textit{zǐ}). Can this possibly reflect a culture where a woman who can give birth to a son is regarded as being capable, and hence good? When these two characters are written independently, they look like this:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
nǚ & zǐ \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

In effect, you have now learnt five characters. They are:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
ni & hào & rén & nǚ & zǐ \\
\hline
you & good/ & person/ & female & son \\
well & people \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Let us now try to write \textit{Zhōngguó} (China).

The word \textit{zhōng} means 'central' or 'middle' by itself, and the word \textit{guó} means 'country' by itself. So you now know what \textit{Zhōngguó} really means! This is probably why China is often referred to in books and newspaper articles as 'the Middle Kingdom'. They look like this in boxes:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
中国 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
Now, let us take these two characters apart. The first one, Zhōng, has four strokes, which are written in the following order:

```
1  2  3  4
```

The second character, guó, has eight strokes, which are written in the following order:

```
1  2  3  4  5
```

The character inside 玉 is pronounced yù by itself meaning 'jade'. It looks like this in a box by itself:

```
玉
```

A country may be interpreted as a place full of treasures such as jade surrounded by walls.

If you remember how to write rén (person/people) from page 30, you now know how to write Zhōngguórén (Chinese) in characters.

```
zhōng  guó  rén
```

You may now wish to write these characters on flash cards with pinyin and English translations on the other side of the cards so that you can practise recognizing them.

**Reading/listening comprehension**

Read the following dialogue, and try to answer the questions below in English. If you have the recording, listen to it first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the questions in English.

Zhang Ping (ZP) is at Beijing Airport meeting John Smith (JS) from Britain.

ZP: Nǐ shì John Smith xiānshēng ma?
JS: Shì de, Nǐ shì . . . ?
JS: Wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.
ZP: Nǐ lèi ma?
JS: Yǒu yídīn lèi. Yīlǜ hěn bù shùnli.
ZP: Nǐ xiāng hě bēi kāfēi ma?
JS: Tāi xiāng le.

**Questions**

A What does John Smith prefer to be called?
B Did John Smith have a pleasant trip?
C What suggestion does Zhang Ping make?
D What is John Smith's response to Zhang Ping's suggestion?
2 Xìngmíng, guójí hé niánlíng

Name, nationality and age

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- say what your name is
- say what your nationality is and whereabouts you come from
- say how old you are
- ask other people questions regarding the above three subjects
- use some of the appropriate expressions to respond to compliments
- count from 0 to 99
- say goodbye
- write more characters and recognize one sign

Dialogue 1

Nǐ jiào shénme? What's your name?

Amy, an American, is travelling in China. She sits opposite Fang Chun, a young Chinese man, on a train heading for Beijing. As Chinese people are very sociable, they soon strike up a conversation.

FĀNG CHÚN: Nǐ huì shuo Zhōngwén ma?
AMY: Hū shuo yìdiǎn.
AMY: Wǒ jiào Amy.
FANG CHUN: Nǐ shì Yīngguórén ma?
AMY: Bù shì.

FĀNG CHÛN: Nǐ shì nà guó rén?
AMY: Nǐ cài.
FANG CHUN: Wǒ bù zhīdào.
AMY: Wǒ shì Měiguórén. Nǐ shì nǎi rén, Xiǎo Fang?
AMY: Nǎi, nǎi.

FANG CHUN: Can you speak Chinese?
AMY: Just a little.
FANG CHUN: Wonderful. My name is Fang Chun. Please call me Xiao Fang. What's your name?
AMY: My name is Amy.
FANG CHUN: Are you British?
AMY: No.
FANG CHUN: Which country do you come from?
AMY: Have a guess.
FANG CHUN: I don't know.
AMY: I'm American. Whereabouts do you come from?
FANG CHUN: I'm from Beijing. Your Chinese is very good.
AMY: Not really.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hui</td>
<td>can/to be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuō</td>
<td>to speak/to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngwén</td>
<td>Chinese [as a language]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yidiān</td>
<td>a little bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tài hǎo le</td>
<td>wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>young/small/to be young/to be small/to be little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shénme</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīngguórén</td>
<td>British [lit. 'Britain person/people']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rén</td>
<td>person/people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎ</td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guó</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎi</td>
<td>to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǐdào</td>
<td>to know/to be aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Měiguórén</td>
<td>American [lit. 'America person/people']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎli</td>
<td>where/whereabouts [see Note 6]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běijīngrén</td>
<td>Beijingese [lit. 'Beijing person/people']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎli</td>
<td>not really/not at all [lit. 'whereabouts']</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Use of hui

The word hui, known as an 'auxiliary verb' in grammatical terms, precedes other verbs to indicate whether a person has the ability to do something. To ask questions such as 'Can you speak Chinese?', simply add ma at the end of the statement. For example:

Statement                              Yes/no question
Susan hui shuo Zhōngwén.               Susan hui shuo Zhōngwén ma?
Susan can speak Chinese.               Can Susan speak Chinese?

To answer a yes/no question which involves the word hui, you say hui for 'yes' and bù hui for 'no'. For example:

A: Amy hui shuo Zhōngwén ma?
   Can Amy speak Chinese?
B: Hui.
   Yes. She can.

2 Difference between yidiān and yóu yidiān

In Dialogue 2 of Lesson 1, we had the expression yóu yidiān (a little bit). There is no difference in meaning between yidiān and yóu yidiān; however, yidiān is usually used after the verb, and yóu yidiān (yī can be omitted here) is used before the verb-adjective. For example:

Tā hui shuo yidiān Yingwén.
   verb
   He/she can speak a little bit of English.

Wǒ yóu yidiān (or yóu díān) lèi.
   verb-adjective
   Lit. I a little bit be tired.
   I'm a bit tired.

3 Question word shénme

When shénme (what) is used in a question, it occurs in the same place as where the information required should appear in the reply. For example:

A: Nǐ jǐào shénme?
   Lit. You be called what?
A: What's your name?
B: Wǒ jǐào Lin Hóng.
   Lit. I be called Lin Hong.
B: My name is Lin Hong.

This rule applies to the positioning of all the question words.

4 Nǐ jǐào shénme?

When you ask a Chinese person Nǐ jǐào shénme? (What is your name?), you are usually given the full name (i.e. surname + first name). If you simply want to find out someone's surname, you
5 Question word ná

Whenever the question word ná (also pronounced néi by some people) precedes nouns, such as guó (country) in Dialogue 1, it means 'which'. For example:

Ni shì ná guó rén?  
Lit. You be which country person?
Which country do you come from?

6 Question word náli

The question word náli (where/whereabouts) is used if you already know someone's nationality, but want to find out whereabouts this person originally comes from. For example:

A: Ni shì Zhōngguó náli rén?  
Lit. You be China whereabouts person?  
Whereabouts in China do you come from?
B: Shānhǎi rén.  
Lit. Shanghai person.  
Shanghai.

Note that both ná and li carry the third tone in isolation. Although li becomes toneless when used with ná, it still changes ná into the second tone in actual pronunciation.

7 Names of countries

Names of countries are translated into Chinese arbitrarily. Some of them are based on the pronunciation, but others are not. Some of them have the word guó (country) in them, but others do not. By adding rén (person/people) to country/place names, we refer to the people who live in that country/place. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/city</th>
<th>Its people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fāguó</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Děiguó</td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àodàliyà</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinxiān</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rìbèn</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinjīápō</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tàiwān</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiāng Gāng</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yídàì</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǚndūn</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 Ways of referring to different languages

To refer to the language spoken in a particular country, in most cases, you can add either wén or yǔ (language) to the first syllable of a country's name or add hùa (speech/talk) to the whole name of a country. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Its language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yìngguó</td>
<td>Yingwén/Yìngyǔ/Yìngguóhùa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fāguó</td>
<td>Fǎwén/Fǎyǔ/Fāguóhùa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Děiguó</td>
<td>Děiwén/Děyǔ/Děiguóhùa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rìbèn</td>
<td>Rìwén/Rìyǔ/Rìbènhùa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, this rule does not apply to some countries. For countries such as Italy and Spain, you must add wén, yǔ or hùa to the whole name of the country. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Its language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yídàì</td>
<td>Yídàìwén/Yídàìyǔ/Yídàìhùa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xìbānyà</td>
<td>Xìbānyàwén/Xìbānyàyǔ/Xìbānyàhùa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are many ways of referring to the (Mandarin) Chinese language. These include: Hányǔ (literally 'hàn language' since the hàn Chinese race comprises the vast majority of the population); Zhōngwén (a more formal term); Zhōngguóhùa (a less formal term); Pǔtōnghuá (lit. 'common speech', which is the Modern Standard Chinese); Guóyǔ (used in Taiwan, lit. 'national
language' as opposed to regional dialects); and Huáyǔ (used among Chinese communities abroad, huá is another adjective for 'Chinese'). However, Chinese people realize that the terms most commonly used by Chinese-language learners are Zhòngwén and Pútónghuà.

9 Use of zhídào

The verb zhídào (to know/to be aware of) is mostly used to talk about things you know or people you know of but not personally. It can be followed by a noun phrase or a sentence. For example:

Ni zhídào tā jiào shénme ma?
Lit. You know he/she be called what [question word]?
Do you know what he/she is called?

Wǒ bù zhídào nǐ shì nǎ guó rén.
Lit. I not know you be which country person.
I don't know which country you come from.

Compare the sentence order of tā jiào shénme and nǐ shì nǎ guó rén after the verb zhídào to that of the questions Tā jiào shénme? (What is he/she called?) and Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén? (Which country are you from?) in Notes 3 and 5 above. You will notice that the sentence order is exactly the same.

10 Polite talk nǎi, nǎi

It is part of Chinese culture to be over-modest. When a person is complimented, he/she is supposed to deny the compliment. One of the expressions used on such occasions is nǎi, meaning 'not at all' or 'not really' and it is usually repeated. Another way of responding to a compliment is simply to deny what has been said. For example:

A: Nǐde Zhòngwén hén hǎo.
A: Your Chinese is very good.

B: Bù hǎo, bù hǎo.
B: Not good, not good.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Give the Chinese terms for the people who live in the following countries/places:

(a) Britain
(b) America
(c) China
(d) Italy
(e) Taiwan
(f) Hong Kong
(g) Australia
(h) Japan
Exercise 3
Give the Chinese terms for the language(s) spoken in the following countries/places:
(a) Britain  
(b) America  
(c) China  
(d) Italy  
(e) Taiwan  
(f) France  
(g) Hong Kong  
(h) Japan

Exercise 4
You meet a Chinese person for the first time. What do you say to her if you want to find out the following?
(a) her name  
(b) whereabouts she comes from  
(c) whether she speaks English

Exercise 5
Fill in the gaps using yìdiǎn or yòu yìdiǎn:
(a) Amy shuō __________ Zhōngwén.  
(b) John __________ lèi.  
(c) Wáng Lín __________ bù gāoxìng.  
(d) Xiǎo Lì xiǎng hē __________ kāfēi.

Exercise 6
Complete the other half of the exchange:
(a) A: __________?  
   B: Wǒ shì Méiguórén.  
(b) A: __________?  
   B: Tā shì Běijīngrén.  
(c) A: Nǐ Zhōngwén hén hǎo.  
   B: __________ (Not really.)  
(d) A: Nǐ huí shuō Rìwén ma?  
   B: __________ (No, I can't.)

Exercise 7
Translate into Chinese:
(a) Do you know which country Amy comes from?  
(b) I cannot speak English.  
(c) She is not Japanese.  
(d) I don't know what he is called.

Dialogue 2
Ni duō dà le? How old are you?  
Amy and Xiao Fang get on very well with each other. The conversation becomes more personal

AMY: Xiǎo Fāng, nǐ jīn nián duō dà le?  
Xiǎo Fāng: Wǒ sānshí èr suì le.  
AMY: Zhēn de? Nǐ kànshāng qu zhī yǒu ěrshíwǔ suì zuòyòu.  
Xiǎo Fāng: Guójiāng. Nǐ duō dà le?  
AMY: Wǒ ěrshíyì.  
AMY: Bù dūi, bù dūi. Nǐ shì ‘Xiǎo Fāng’.  
(five minutes before the train arrives at Beijing, they say goodbye)  
Xiǎo Fāng: Fǎnshì nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng, Amy.  
AMY: Wǒ yě shì, Xiǎo Fāng.  
Xiǎo Fāng: Zài jiàn, Amy.  
AMY: Zài jiàn, Xiǎo Fāng.  
Xiǎo Fāng: Xiǎo Fāng, how old are you this year?  
AMY: I’m thirty-two.  
Xiǎo Fāng: I’m flattered. How old are you?  
AMY: I’m twenty-one years old.  
Xiǎo Fāng: You are really young. In that case, I should be ‘old Fang’.  
AMY: No, no. You are ‘young Fang’.  
(five minutes before the train arrives at Beijing, they say goodbye)  
Xiǎo Fāng: Fǎnshì nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng, Amy.  
AMY: Me too, Xiao Fang.  
Xiǎo Fāng: Goodbye, Amy.  
AMY: Bye, Xiao Fang.
Vocabulary

jīn nián  this year
duó  how
dà  to be old/to be large/to be big/large/big
le  [grammar word, see Note 13]
sānshí'ér  thirty-two
sì  years old
zhēn de?  really?
kànshāngqu  to appear/to seem/to look
zhíyou  only
zuòyòu  about/approximate [*lit. 'left right']
guòjiàng  to be flattered [*lit. 'over-praising']
ěrshíyi  twenty-one
zhēn  really
niánqìng  to be young/young
zhēnme shuō  in that case [*lit. 'so speak']
yínggài  should/ought
duì  to be correct/correct
bù duì  to be incorrect/incorrect
rènshì  to know [somebody]/to get to know [somebody]
wǒ yě shì  me too/same here [*lit. 'I also am']
zàijīān  goodbye [*lit. 'again meet']

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Nǐ duō dà le?

This question is used to ask about an adult's age. Generally, Chinese people (including women!) are not offended by the question Nǐ duō dà le? (How old are you?). When the verb-adjective dà (to be big/old) is used in this context, it refers to someone's age, not their size. The word láo (to be old) we learnt in Lesson 1 is not appropriate here because Nǐ duō láo le? implies that the person being asked does look very very old.

12 Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0-9</th>
<th>10-19</th>
<th>20-29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lín</td>
<td>shí</td>
<td>ěrshí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yì</td>
<td>shíyī</td>
<td>ěrshíyī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěr (liáng)</td>
<td>shí'ér</td>
<td>ěrshí'ér</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān</td>
<td>shísān</td>
<td>ěrshísān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sì</td>
<td>shísi</td>
<td>ěrshísi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wù</td>
<td>shíwù</td>
<td>ěrshíwù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liù</td>
<td>shíliù</td>
<td>ěrshíliù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qí</td>
<td>shíqí</td>
<td>ěrshíqí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bā</td>
<td>shíbā</td>
<td>ěrshíbā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔ</td>
<td>shíjiǔ</td>
<td>ěrshíjiǔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers 30, 40, etc. . . . 90 are formed by adding shí (ten) to sān (three), sì (four), etc. . . . jiǔ (nine). Thus we have: sānshí (thirty), sìshí (forty), wǔshí (fifty), etc. The numbers 31-9, 41-9, etc. use the same principle as 21-9 above. An apostrophe (') is used to mark the break between two syllables whenever there is ambiguity in pronunciation. Thus we have shí'ér (twelve) instead of shí'èr.

13 Grammar word le

This grammar word le (also called 'past particle') in this context suggests a change of state. For instance, when someone says Wǒ ěrshíyī suí le (I'm twenty-one years old), the speaker means that he/she has already become twenty-one (both suí and le can be omitted, but suí must be used if the age is less than ten). For example:

Mary sānshíbā. or Mary sānshíbā suí. Mary is thirty-eight.
Linlin wù suí. Linlin is five.

Note that (a) le must be used in the question Nǐ duō dà le? (How old are you?); and (b) in telling one's age, the verb shí (to be) is not used.

14 Use of kànshāngqu

The usage of the verb kànshāngqu is very similar to the English verbs 'to look', 'to appear' or 'to seem' when they are used in affirmative sentences. For example:
18 topic structure

It is very common, but not essential, in the Chinese language to put the topic of the sentence first. For example:

Rènshi nǐ, wǒ hén gāoxìng.

Lit. To know you, I very be pleased.

I'm very pleased to have met you.

Lái Zhōngguó, wǒ hén gāoxìng.

Lit. To come to China, I very be happy.

I'm so happy that I've come to China.

Exercises

Exercise 8

Describe Amy and Fang Chun – the two characters in this lesson (e.g. their nationality, age, etc.).

Exercise 9

Complete the other half of the conversation:

(a) A: Nǐ Zhōngwén hén hǎo.
   B: ________ (Not really).

(b) A: Bill duō dà le?
   B: ________ (about 30).

(c) A: David shì Méiguó rén.
   B: ________ (Incorrect). Tā shì Yīngguó rén.

Exercise 10

Fill in the blanks using rènshi (to know somebody) or zhīdao (to know something):

(a) Wǒ bù ________ tā huì shuō Zhōngwén.
(b) Xiǎo Fang ________ Amy.
(c) Tā bù ________ Amy shì nà guó rén.
(d) Wǒ hěn xiǎng ________ Xiǎo Fang.
Exercise 11

Turn the following sentences into questions regarding the underlined parts (the underlined part is the information you wish to obtain):

Example: Amy shi Mēiguórén. → Amy shi nǎ guó rén?
(a) Tā jiǎo Fāng Chūn.
(b) Xiǎo Fāng shì Běijīngrén.
(c) Amy jīn nián ěrshíyī suì.

Exercise 12

Translate into Chinese:
(a) She doesn't look very happy.
(b) Simon looks very young.
(c) You look a little tired.

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Wǒ shuō Zhōngwén (I speak Chinese)

There are four characters in this sentence and you will be pleased to know that we already learnt one of them in Lesson 1 (zhōng in Zhōngguó). This is how they should appear in boxes:

The verb shuō (to speak/to say) has two parts and consists of nine strokes in total. The left part, 韦, is called the ‘speech radical’ which is used to form many characters concerned with speech and language. Let us see how shuō is written:

Since you already know how to write zhōng in Zhōngwén (Chinese language), let us move on to wén, which consists of only four strokes:

(b) Xièxié (Thank you)

The two characters representing xièxié are exactly the same. This is how they should appear in boxes:
The character xiè, although appearing to consist of three parts, is treated for descriptive purposes as having two parts. The left part 亻 is a 'speech radical', and the right part 射, pronounced shè, means 'to fire (e.g. an arrow)'. However, when you write this character, you must think of it as having three blocks. Each block takes up approximately the same space, which in total results in twelve strokes. These twelve strokes are written in the following order:

1 2 3 4 5 6

7 8 9 10 11 12

2 Recognize the following sign

The first sign we are going to try to recognize is Běijīng since this may be one of the first Chinese signs that greets your eyes when you arrive at Beijing Airport. Literally, Běijīng means 'north capital'. The characters look like this:

北京

Congratulations! Now you know more than a dozen Chinese characters, and you even know how to write some of them.

Reading/listening comprehension

1 Read the following dialogue, and try to answer the questions below. If you have the recording, listen to it first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the questions in English.

Two Chinese people, Meixin and Zhongtao are talking about someone

MEIXIN: Nǐ rènshì Oliver ma?
ZHONGTAO: Rènshì.
MEIXIN: Tā shì nà guó rén?
ZHONGTAO: Yingguórén.
MEIXIN: Tā huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?
ZHONGTAO: Hui shuō yídàn.
MEIXIN: Nǐ zhīdào tā duò dà le ma?
ZHONGTAO: Bù zhīdào. Nǐ xiāng rènshì tā ma?
MEIXIN: Tài xiāng le.

Questions

A Does Zhongtao know Oliver?
B Which country is Oliver from?
C Does Oliver speak Chinese?
D Does Zhongtao know how old Oliver is?
E Does Meixin want to meet Oliver?

2 Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks to reflect the change of tones in actual speech. If you have the recording, listen to it first, and then add on the correct tone marks. Just to remind you: (') first tone; (") second tone; (') third tone; (") fourth tone.

(a) xièxiè (thank you)  (b) bu zhīdào (do not know)
(c) bu dui (incorrect)  (d) Yingguórén (British)
(e) shuō Zhōngwén (speak Chinese)  (f) tài hào le (wonderful)
(g) zàijiàn (goodbye)  (h) wǒ yě shì (me too)
3 Zài gōngsī de jùhuì shàng
At a company party

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
• exchange greetings in a more sophisticated way
• use some time-related phrases
• use question words nár (where) and shéi (who)
• use le to indicate a past action or an action which has taken place
• use some measure words
• negate some verbs with méi yǒu
• write more characters and recognize two useful signs and some numbers

Dialogue 1
Zěnme yáng? How are you? ☞

Rachel and Shulan are very good friends as well as knowing each other through business. Rachel also knows Shulan's husband, Yanzhong. They have not seen each other for two years. They are so pleased to see each other again at a business party in Taibei, capital of Taiwan

Rachel: Shūlán, hǎo jiǔ bù jiàn. Nǐ zěnme yáng?
Rachel: Wǒ shì hěn lèi. Zuǐjīn wǒde gōngzuò hěn máng. Yánzhōng zěnme yáng?
Shūlán: Hái hǎo, xièxiè. Ta zuòtiān chūmén le.
Rachel: Qù nár le?
Shūlán: Méiguó. Xià ge xīngqī huílái. Nǐde nán péngyou lái le ma?

Rachel: Shulan, I haven't seen you for ages. How are you?
Shulan: I'm very well. Are you well? You look a little tired.
Rachel: I am tired. I've been very busy with work recently. How is Yanzhong?
Shulan: Fine, thanks. He went away yesterday.
Rachel: Where has he gone?
Shulan: America. He's coming back next week. Has your boyfriend come with you?
Rachel: Yes . . .
(at this very moment, Stuart, Rachel's boy-friend, passes by)
Rachel: Stuart, let me introduce you to my good friend, Shulan. Shulan, this is my boy-friend, Stuart.
Stuart: Hello, Shulan. Rachel is always talking about you.
Shulan: Hi, Stuart. We meet at last.
Vocabulary

hāo  very
jiǔ  long (as of time)
bù jiàn  not see
zhènme  how
Zhènme yàng?  How are you?/How are things?
shì  [emphatic word]
zúijùn  recently
gōngzuò  work/to work
máng  to be busy/busy
hái hào  to be all right/to be fine
zuòtiān  yesterday
tā  he/she
chúmén  to be away/to go away
qū  to go/to go to
ná  where
xǐ  next
xìngqī  week
húilái  to return [lit. ‘return come’]
nán  male
péngyou  friend
rǎng  to let/to allow
jiěshào  to introduce
yǐxià  [see Note 9]
cháng  often/always
shuōqì  to mention/to talk [shuōqì in connected speech]
wómen  we/us
zhōngyú  finally/at last
jiànmì  to meet

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Hāo jiǔ bù jiàn

This is a very common expression to be used if you have not seen someone for a long time. Literally, the phrase means ‘very long no see’. The word hāo, although the same hāo as in nǐ hāo (hello), in this instance means ‘very’ and is used as an adverb. There is an element of informality as well as exaggeration when hāo is used to mean ‘very’ or ‘so’. For example:

Wǒ hāo lèi.  I’m so tired.
Tā hāo gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.  He is so happy to see you.

2 Zhènme yàng?

The greeting expression Nǐ zhènme yàng? (How are you?/How are things?) is used very often among colleagues and friends, basically people who know each other. It is one of those phrases which are difficult to analyse grammatically. Let us concentrate on its usage. If the question is aimed at the person you are speaking to, nǐ (you) is usually omitted. If you enquire about someone or something, you must place that person or thing at the beginning of the question. For example:

Nǐde nán péngyou zhènme yàng?  How is your boy-friend?
Tiānqì zhènme yàng?  How is the weather?

In response to the question Nǐ zhènme yàng?, you may use some of the following expressions:

Hěn hāo.  Very well.
Bù tài hāo.  Not very well.
Hái hāo.  Fine.
Bù hāo.  Not well.
Hái bù cuò.  Not bad.
Hěn zào.  Terrible.
Mámá hūhū.  Just so-so.

3 Emphatic shì

In order to emphasize certain phrases, the word shì (lit. ‘to be’) can be used before these phrases. Whenever shì is used for emphatic purposes in this book, it will be capitalized to distinguish it from ordinary shì (be). For example:

Meixin shì hěn mǎng.  Meixin is very busy.
subject
Wǒ shì bù xiǎng hê kāfê.  I DON’T want to have coffee.
subject

When emphatic shì is used in sentences with the verb kànsàngqu (to look/to seem), which we saw in Lesson 2, shì appears after the verb. For example:

Jiājiā kànsàngqu shì hěn niánqīng.
verb
Jiājiā does look very young.
Note that this rule does not apply to sentences where the word shì (to be) is used in the first place. Thus you cannot say Wǒ suí shì Yingguórén (another emphatic word has to be used in this case, see Note 19 below).

4 Use of mànɡ

When the English sentence ‘She is busy with work’ is translated into Chinese, it becomes ‘Her work is busy’. For example:

Shúlàn de gōnɡzuò bèn mànɡ.
Lit. Shulan’s work very busy.

In such cases, the word de can be omitted. If you are asked to specify what you are busy with, you can put such information after mànɡ. For example:

A: Nǐ zuìjīn màng shénme?
Lit. You recently be busy what?
A: What have you been busy with recently?
B: Mànɡ gōnɡzuò.
Lit. Busy work.
B: Busy with work.

5 Time-related phrase

In Chinese, time-related phrases (e.g. ‘next week’, ‘today’) are placed either at the beginning of a sentence or before the verb. For example:

Jonathan xià ge xìnɡqí lái  Tàiwán.
Lit. Jonathan next week come to Taiwan.
Jonathan is coming to Taiwan next week.

Xìnɡqí, Yánzhōnɡ qù  Yínɡguó.
Lit. Next week, Yanzhong go to Britain.
Yanzhong is going to Britain next week.

Note that when the time-related phrase such as xià ge xìnɡqí (next week) is used, the context itself makes it very clear that it is a future event we are talking about. This sentence order applies to questions as well (see Note 6 below).

6 Question word nàr

In Note 5 of Lesson 2, we saw the question word nà (which). The same word also means ‘where’. When nà means ‘where’, it is spelt with an r at the end, i.e. nár, and hence pronounced with the tongue rolled up a little. As with shénme (what) and nǎlǐ whereabouts which we saw earlier, nár is also placed where the information required should appear in the reply. For example:

A: Nǐ xià ge xìnɡqí qù nár?
Lit. You next week go where?
A: Where are you going next week?
B: Wǒ xià ge xìnɡqí qù  Fānɡuó.
Lit. I next week go France.
B: I’m going to France next week.

7 More on le

In Note 13 of Lesson 2, we saw one usage of the particle le (in Nǐ duō dà le?). Here, in Dialogue 1, le is added after some verbs to indicate that an event happened in the past (especially when a time-related phrase such as ‘yesterday’ is used). For example:

Rachel zuòtiān chūmén le. Rachel went away yesterday.
Tā qù nár le? Where did she go?
[she may be back already]

Depending on the context, especially when no time-related phrases are used, le can either indicate a past event or an event which has happened and is still happening:

Rachel chūmén le. Rachel has been away. [she is still away]
Tā qù nár le? Where has she gone? [she is still away]

If there are other words/phrases (i.e. objects) after the verb, and they are not very long, le can be placed either after the verb or after the object. For example:

Méixin qù Tàiwán le. or Méixin qù le Tàiwán.

Depending on the context, these two sentences can either mean ‘Meixin went to Taiwan’ or ‘Meixin has gone to Taiwan’. Note that le cannot be added to every verb.
8 Omission of the personal pronoun

The personal pronoun Tā (he) is omitted from the following two sentences in Dialogue 1: Qu nár le? and Xià ge xíngqì huílái. The complete sentences should be Tā qu nár le? and Tā xià ge xíngqì huílái. The omission of personal pronouns (e.g. ‘I,’ ‘you,’ ‘he/she’) is very common in the spoken language if they can be easily inferred from the context.

9 Use of yíxià

The word yíxià does not have any specific meaning in this context except that it softens the abruptness of Rāng wǒ jiěshào . . . (Let me introduce . . . ). Without the use of yíxià, it sounds very bossy and tactless.

10 Difference between jiānmìan and jiāndào

We saw earlier in Lesson 1 the verb jiāndào in Hēng gāoxìng jiāndào ni (Very pleased to meet you). Here, we have the sentence Wǒmen zhòngyù jiānmìan le (We meet at last). The main difference between the two verbs lies in their usage:

\[ X + \text{jiāndào} + Y \]

two or more than two people + jiānmìan

For example:

Shūlān zuòtiān jiāndào le Stuart.
Shūlān met Stuart yesterday.

Wǒmen xià ge xíngqì jiānmìan.
We are going to meet next week.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Solve the problems:

(a) You have not seen a Chinese friend of yours for a long time, and you have just bumped into him. What do you say?

(b) You want to introduce your good friend Amy and your Chinese friend Xiao Lin to each other. What do you say?

Exercise 2

Use emphatic shí to rewrite the following sentences, and then translate them into English:

(a) John bù tài máng.
(b) Shūlān de gōngzuò hén máng.
(c) Wāng Lín kànshàng guī tíng láo.

Exercise 3

Translate into Chinese:

(a) A: Where did you go yesterday?
   B: I went to London.
(b) A: Where are you going next week?
   B: China.
(c) A: Where has Yanzhong gone?
   B: He’s gone to America.

Exercise 4

Place le in an appropriate place in the following sentences, and then translate them into English:

(a) Andrew qu Méiguó.
(b) Elena hē kǎfēi.
(c) Zuòtiān Xīngháng shuōqí Tiānyì.

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks using jiāndào or jiānmìan:

(a) Shūlān zhōngyǔ _______ le Stuart.
(b) Tāmen xià ge xíngqì _______
(c) Rachel hé (‘and’) Shūlān zuòtiān ______ le.
(d) Wǒ bù xiǎng _______ Zhāng Píng.
Dialogue 2  
Tā jiēhūn le ma? Is he married? ☞

Later at the party, a colleague of Shulan's, Lin Fang (female), chats with Shulan.

LIN FANG: Shūlán, nà liáng ge rén shì shéi?
SHūLán: Nán de jiāo Stuart. Shì WP gōngsī de fǔ jǐnglì.
LIN FANG: Tā zhēn shuāi. Nǐ zhídào tā jiēhūn le ma?
SHūLán: Měi yǒu jiēhūn. Búguò, tā yōu nǚ péngyou le.
LIN FANG: À! Zhēn kěxī.
SHūLán: Wèishénme?
LIN FANG: Měi shénme. Nà ge nǚ de shì shéi?
SHūLán: Tā jiù shì Stuart de nǚ péngyou. Tā jiāo Rachel.

LIN FANG: Shulan, who are those two people?
SHūLán: The man is called Stuart. He is the deputy manager of WP company.
LIN FANG: He is really smart. Do you know if he is married?
SHūLán: No, he isn't. But he's got a girl-friend.
LIN FANG: What a shame!
SHūLán: Why?
LIN FANG: Nothing. Who is that woman?
SHūLán: She is Stuart's girl-friend. She's called Rachel.

Vocabulary

nà  that [see Note 12]
líáng  two
gē  [measure word, see Note 11]
shéi  who

gōngsī  company
fǔ  deputy/vice
jǐnglī  manager

shuài  to be smart
jiēhūn  to be married

měi yǒu  not
búguò  however/but

yōu  to have

nǚ  female
ài  [exclamation word]

zhēn kěxī  what a shame/pity! [lit. 'really pity']

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Measure word

Discussing quantities of things in Chinese can be a little complicated in that a measure word must be used between a number and its noun. Measure words are also used between zhè/má (this/that) and its noun. In Lesson 1, we actually came across one measure word běi in yì běi kāfèi (one cup of coffee). Different categories of nouns require different measure words. For instance, gé is used for human beings whereas tóu is used for pigs, cattle, etc. and tiáo is used for fish, rivers, etc. For example:

Wǒ rènshī sān gé Yīngguórénn.  
I know three British people.

Tā yǒu èrshí tóu zhū.  
He has twenty pigs.

At this stage, if you cannot remember which measure word goes with which category of nouns, use gé instead. Please also note that the measure word gé, which carries the fourth tone in isolation, becomes toneless when used in a phrase or sentence. More measure words will be introduced as we progress in the book.

12 Use of pronoun nà

When nà or zhè is followed by the verb shì (to be), they mean 'that' or 'this' respectively and function as subjects. For example:

Nà/Zhē shì wǒde kāfèi.  
That/This is my coffee.

When nà or zhè precedes nouns, or numbers plus nouns, measure words such as gé must be used. Whenever the number is yī (one), it is almost always omitted. So nà yī gé rén becomes nà ge rén (that person). When nà (sometimes pronounced nèi) is followed
by numbers other than one plus measure words, it means 'those'. This rule also applies to the pronoun zhè (which can be pronounced zhēi here). For example:

nà/zhè ge Méiguó rén
nà sān bēi kāfēi
zhè sān bēi kāfēi

Remember that nà (that) has the fourth tone whereas nā (which) has the third tone.

13 Use of liǎng

When you count, the number to use for two is ēr. However, if you want to say 'two somethings', you should almost always use liǎng instead. For example:

liǎng bēi kāfēi two cups of coffee
liǎng ge Bēijīngrén two Beijing people

14 Changing adjectives to nouns by adding de

Adjectives such as nán (male) and nǚ (female) can be changed into nouns by adding de after them. Thus we have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nán</td>
<td>nán de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǚ</td>
<td>nǚ de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǎo</td>
<td>lǎo de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>xiǎo de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that we can also add the word rén (person/people) after nán and nǚ to form nouns nán rén (lit. 'male person') for 'man' and nǚ rén (lit. 'female person') for 'woman', which are more formal than nán de and nǚ de. On public signs, nán means 'men's toilet', and nǚ means 'women's toilet'. See the character section at the end of this lesson.

15 Linking two nouns with de

Another use of de is to link two nouns, the first being subordinate to the second. It is equivalent to the English word 'of' or apostrophe plus 's'. For example:

gōngsī de jīnglǐ
company's manager/the manager of the company

Rachel de nán péngyou
Rachel's boy-friend

16 Question word shéi

The question word shéi ('who') can appear at the beginning or at the end of the question depending on how you want your question to be structured. For example:

Shéi shì WP gōngsī de jīnglǐ?
Lit. Who be WP company's manager?

WP gōngsī de jīnglǐ shì shéi?
Lit. WP company's manager be who?

17 Negation word méi yǒu

So far, we have been using bù to negate adverbs, verb-adjectives, and verbs for present and future events. Another important negation word is méi yǒu (yǒu is often omitted). It is mainly used to: (a) indicate that an action has not taken place; (b) indicate that an action did not happen; and (c) negate the verb yǒu (to have). You must never use méi to negate an adverb or a verb-adjective. It is only verbs (i.e. 'doing words') which can be negated by méi or méi yǒu. Simply add méi or méi yǒu before the verb. With the verb yǒu (to have), just add méi in front of it. For example:

Zuótiān wǒ méi yǒu qù Lúdān. I didn't go to London yesterday.
Stuart méi yǒu lái. Stuart hasn't arrived.
Wú Hái méi yǒu nán péngyou. Wu Hai hasn't got a boy-friend.

Remember: whenever méi or méi yǒu is used, le is usually not used. Le can only be used together with méi yǒu when you want to indicate that you had something before but now it is running out. For example:

Wǒ méi yǒu kāfēi le. I've run out of coffee.
Kāfēi méi yǒu le. Coffee is running out.

Another thing to notice is that there are no equivalent Chinese words to the English words 'a' and 'the'.
18 Pronoun shénme

Earlier in Lesson 2, we saw shénme (what) used as a question word. Shénme can also be used as a pronoun meaning 'anything' and it is usually used with the negation word méi to form negative sentences. For example:

Wǒ méi shuō shénme.
I didn't say anything/I said nothing.

Tā méi hé shénme.
He didn't drink anything/He drank nothing.

19 Emphatic word jiu

In Note 3 of Dialogue 1 above, we mentioned that sentences with the verb shì (to be) cannot be emphasized by the emphatic word sǐ. The correct word to use in such cases is jiu. Simply add jiu in front of shì. For example:

Wǒ jiu shì Kàn Qián.
I am Kan Qian. [often used on the telephone]

Tā jiu shì gōngsi de jīnglí.
She is the manager of the company.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Referring to the two dialogues in this lesson, answer the following questions in Chinese:

(a) Shānlán rénshì Rachel ma?
(b) Rachel rénshì Lín Fāng ma?
(c) Rachel jiēhūn le ma?
(d) Shěi shì Stuart?

Exercise 7

Translate into Chinese using appropriate measure words:

(a) fifteen American people  (b) two Chinese people
(c) three men               (d) eight cups of coffee
(e) four good friends

Exercise 8

Complete the other half of the conversation:

(a) A: Nǐ yǒu kāfēi ma?
   B: _______ (Yes, I have.)
(b) A: Kevin yǒu nǐ péngyou ma?
   B: _______ (No, he hasn't.)
(c) A: Wǒ bù huí shuō Yīngwén.
   B: _______ (What a shame!)

Exercise 9

Turn the following sentences into questions regarding the underlined parts, which is the information you wish to obtain:

Example: Tā jiào Tāng Shūlán. → Tā jiào shénme?

(a) Yánzhōng qu Měiguó le.
(b) Stuart shì Wǒ gōngsi de fū jīnglí.
(c) Shūlán shì Zhōngguórén.
(d) Wǒ xià ge xīngqì qù Tàiwān.

Exercise 10

Use méi (you) or bù to negate the following sentences, then translate them into English:

(a) Wǒ xià ge xīngqì qù Zhōngguó.
(b) Jane jiēhūn le.
(c) Xiǎo Fāng yǒu Yídāi kāfēi.
(d) Wáng Píng rénshì Měixīn.
(e) Zuòtiān wǒmen qù le Lǜndūn.
(f) Wǒ xiāng hé kāfēi.

Exercise 11

Fill in the blanks using emphatic words jiu or sǐ:

(a) Stuart _______ shì Rachel de nán péngyou.
(b) Tā _______ méi qù Zhōngguó.
(c) Měixīn kānsī huàngqu _______ hěn niánqīng.
(d) Nǐ _______ shì Lín Fāng ma?
Characters

1 Learning to write:
   (a) Pronouns tā (he) and tā (she)

   First of all, there is a difference between the characters for 'he' (tā) and 'she' (tā). The difference is in the left part, whilst they share the same right part:

   tā he 他
   1 2 3 4 5

   tā she 她
   1 2 3 4 5 6

   As you can see, the male tā has the 'person radical' 人 and the female tā has the 'woman radical' 女.

   (b) Verbs qù (to go) and lái (to come/arrive)

   qù 去
   1 2 3 4 5 6

   lái 来
   1 2 3 4

   (c) Yes/No question word ma and short answers Shi de (Yes) and Bù shì (No)

   ma 吗
   1 2 3 4 5 6

   The left part of ma is called the 'mouth radical' 口 which is pronounced kǒu when used on its own. Kǒu is a formal term for 'mouth'.

2 Recognizing two important signs

Below are two important signs to remember: one is nán for 'men', and the other is nǚ for 'women'. We actually learnt how to write nǚ when we were learning the character hǎo in Lesson 1. These two signs are useful to know if you need to use a public toilet:

3 Recognizing numbers:

   一 二 三 四 五

   yi èr sān sì wǔ

   one two three four five
Exercise 12

Convert the following pinyin into characters:
(a) nü rén (woman/women)
(b) Zhōngguórén (Chinese person/people)
(c) nǐ hǎo (hello)
(d) wǒ shuō Zhōngwén (I speak Chinese)

Reading/listening comprehension

Read the following passage carefully, and then write ‘true’ or ‘false’ next to the sentences below. If you have the recording, listen to the passage first (try not to look at the script) and then write ‘true’ or ‘false’ next to the sentences below:


Vocabulary

zhāngfu  husband (same as the word for ‘Mr’)
hé  and

Questions

A Zhū Mín shì Zhōngguórén. ___________
B Zhū Mín yòu sān ge Yīngguó péngyou. ___________
C Zhū Mín de Yīngguó péngyou jiào Mary. ___________
D Heather kànshàngqu bù lǎo. ___________
E Heather méi jiēhūn. ___________
F Joe shì Heather de zhāngfu. ___________
G Heather hé Joe zuòtiān qù le Zhōngguó. ___________

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- tell the time
- obtain information regarding time
- use the verb yǒu appropriately
- ask yes/no questions in another way
- make an appointment
- apologize
- attract someone’s attention
- recognize and write more characters

Dialogue 1

Jǐ diǎn le? 几点了？ What’s the time? 

David, an Australian, and his Malaysian wife, Siti, are visiting Shanghai as tourists and staying in a hotel. They arrived very late last night, and forgot to adjust their watches to the local time. It is now morning. They ask a hotel employee the time and the time at which breakfast is served.

DAVID: Záoshang hǎo.
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Záoshang hǎo.
DAVID: Qīng wèn, xiǎnzài jǐ diǎn le?
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Bā diǎn shí fēn.
DAVID: Xièxiè.
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Bù xiè.
SITI: Cánting jí dián kái mén?

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Yíjíng kái mén le. Záofán shì cong qí dián yí kè dào bā dián bàn.

DAVID: Hái yǒu ěrshí fènzhòng. Wǒmen kuài qù ba.

SITI: Hǎo de. Huíjiàn.

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Huíjiàn.

DAVID: 早上好。

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 早上好。

DAVID: 请问，现在几点了?

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 八点十分。

DAVID: 谢谢。

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 不谢。

SITI: 餐厅几点开门?

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 已经开门了。早饭是从七点一刻到八点半。

DAVID: 还有二十分钟。我们快去吧。

SITI: 好的。回见。

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 回见。

DAVID: Good morning.

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Good morning.

DAVID: What's the time now please?

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: It's ten past eight.

DAVID: Thank you.

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: You are welcome.

SITI: 餐厅几点开门?

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: 已经开门了。早餐是是七点一刻到八点半。

DAVID: 我们赶去吧。

SITI: OK. See you later.

HOTEL EMPLOYEE: See you later.

Vocabulary

záoshang 早上 morning
wèn 问 to ask
xiànzài 现在 now
jǐ 几 how many?
bá 八 eight

diàn 点 o'clock
shí 十 ten
fēn 分 minute [see Note 5]
cánting 餐厅 restaurant/dining-room
kái mén 开门 to be open/to open [lit. 'open door']
yíjíng 已经 already
qí 七 seven
kè 刻 quarter
záofán 早饭 breakfast [lit. 'early food/meal']
cóng... dào... 从...到... from ... to
bān 半 half
hái 还 still/also
ěrshí 二十 twenty
fènzhòng 分钟 minute [see Note 5]
kuài 快 soon/quickly/to be fast
huíjiàn 回见 see you later [lit. 'return meet']

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Polite way of asking for information Qing wèn...

Early in Lesson 1 (Note 7), we had the word qǐng (please) used to invite someone politely to do something. The same word is used in qǐng wèn, which literally means 'please ask ...'. This is a polite phrase which is used when asking for information or help. It can be broadly translated as 'May I ask ...?' or 'Could you tell me ... please?' For example:

Qíng wèn, nǐ jiao shénme?
May I ask what your name is?

Qíng wèn, nǐ shì Sīfāng ma?
Could you tell me please if you are Sifang?

2 Telling the time

To tell the time, the key words are diàn (o'clock), fèn (minute), bàn (half), kè (quarter) and chà (lacking/minus). The hour comes first, then the minute. For example:

A 7:10 qǐ diàn shí fèn
B 8:05 bā diàn wǔ fèn or bā diàn líng wǔ
C 9:15 jiǔ diàn yī kè or jiǔ diàn shí wù fèn
D 10:30  shí diǎn sānshí fēn or shí diǎn bàn
E 2:45  liǎng diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn or liǎng diǎn sān kē or sān diǎn
chà yì kē or sān diǎn chà shí wǔ

Note that (a) the minute word fēn can be omitted once the minute is over ten; (b) if you want to omit the word fēn when the minute is less than ten, put the word líng (zero) after diǎn (see B above); (c) do not use the word fēn when kè or bàn is used; (d) use the number liǎng (two) not èr in telling the time; (e) to say '2:45', use any of the four expressions in (E) above. Because there are no terms equivalent to the English abbreviations a.m. and p.m. in Chinese, it is either the context or the adding of words such as zhǎoshàng bā diǎn (lit. 'morning eight o'clock), xīwǔ liǎng diǎn (lit. 'afternoon two o'clock') or wānshàng bā diǎn (lit. 'evening eight o'clock') which enables people to make such a distinction.

3 Jǐ diǎn le?

The question word jǐ (how many) is used to ask number-related questions and the person who asks the question expects a small number. The literal translation for Jǐ diǎn le? is very awkward. It is something like 'How many o'clock already?' (as le indicates that something has already happened). The best thing to do is simply to remember that Jǐ diǎn le? is the equivalent of the English 'What time is it?' or 'What's the time?' In answering the question, you can say the time with or without le. For example:

A: Qīng wén, jǐ diǎn le? A: What time is it, please?
B: Sān diǎn sānshí wǔ. B: It’s three thirty-five.

Note that there is no Chinese equivalent of 'It is ...' to be used before the time.

Similar to other question words, jǐ occurs in the place where the information required in the reply should appear. For example:

A: Cǎntīng jǐ diǎn kāimén?
Lit. Restaurant what time open?
A: What time does the restaurant open?
B: Cǎntīng qì diǎn kāimén.
Lit. Restaurant seven o'clock kāimén.

Note that (a) the phrase indicating the time always occurs before the verb; and (b) no extra word like at in English is needed before the time.

4 Use of yǐjīng . . . le

If you use yǐjīng (already) before some verbs or verb-adjectives, you must use le in the same phrase/sentence. Put le at the very end of the phrase/sentence. However, the word le can be used without yǐjīng to indicate that an event has already happened. For example:

Tā yǐjīng wǔshí suì le.
He is fifty already.

Jane yǐjīng qù Zhōngguó le.
Jane has already gone to China.

Jane qù Zhōngguó le.
Jane went to China. Jane has gone to China.

5 Difference between fēn and fēnzhòng

The word fēn is only used when telling the time, whereas fēnzhòng is used as a unit of time when referring to the length of time. For example:

Xiànzāi shí liǎng diǎn shí fēn.
It's ten past two.

Wǒ yǒu sānshí fēnzhòng chǐ wǔfān.
I have got thirty minutes to eat lunch.

6 Use of kāimén

The verb kāimén (lit. 'open door'), meaning 'to be open' or 'to open', is used to refer to the opening time of various shops and organizations. You cannot use this verb to say 'open the coffee jar', for example. That is to say, the verb kāimén cannot take an object. For example:

Cǎntīng qì diǎn kāimén.
The restaurant opens at seven.

Xìa ge xìngqī cǎntīng bù kāimén.
Next week, the restaurant is not open.
7 Position of kuài

When kuài (quickly/soon) is used as an adverb, it is placed before verbs in those sentences that ask for help, or that give orders. For example:

A child begs his/her mother:

Nǐ kuài huílai ba.
Lit. You soon return please.
Please come back soon.

A mother says to a child:

Kuài yídàn chī.
Lit. Quickly a little eat.
Eat a bit quickly.

Exercises

Exercise 1
Use the clock faces to tell the time:

(a) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(b) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(c) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(d) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(e) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(f) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

Exercise 2
Match the times to the clocks:

(a) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(b) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(c) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(d) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(e) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

(f) \[ \begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6 \\
7 & 8 & 9 \\
10 & 11 & 12
\end{array} \]

1 bā diǎn líng wǔ
2 shí yī diǎn ěrshí fēn
3 shí'èr diǎn bān
4 jiǔ diǎn yī kē
5 liǎng diǎn sǐshíwǔ
6 sī diǎn chà wǔ fēn

Exercise 3
Solve the problem:

(a) You see a Chinese person early in the morning. What do you say to greet him/her?
(b) You want to find out what time it is. What do you say?
(c) You want to ask a Chinese person’s name in a polite way. How do you phrase your question?
(d) How many ways can you think of to respond to Xièxié (Thank you)?

Exercise 4

Fill in the blanks and then translate the sentences into English:
(a) Zaofān shì _______ (from) qǐ diǎn _______ (to) bā diǎn bàn.
(b) Wǒmen yǒu wǔ _______ (minutes) hē kǎfèi.
(c) _______ (Now) shǐ liù diǎn bàn.
(d) Tā _______ (already) jiēhūn le.

Exercise 5

Translate into Chinese:
(a) What time does the restaurant open?
(b) Do you know what time the restaurant opens?
(c) Alan is already thirty years old.
(d) Please come to Britain soon.

Dialogue 2
Qù yóuyǒng 去游泳 Going swimming

David and Siti want to find out if there is a swimming pool in the hotel. They first ask a Chinese woman who happens to be sitting next to them in the café.

DAVID: Ni zhídào zhè ge fāndiàn yǒu yóuyǒng chí ma?
CHINESE: Duǐbùqǐ. Wǒ bù zhídào.

(they ask a hotel employee later on)

SITI: Duǐbùqǐ. Nǐmènde fāndiàn yǒu yóuyǒng chí ma?
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Yǒu liǎng ge. Yī ge dà de. Yī ge xiǎo de.
SITI: Tāi hào le. Nǐ kěyǐ gào su wǒ kāimén shíjiān ma?
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Dāngrán kěyǐ. Dà de cóng záoshāng qǐ diǎn kāi dào xiàwǔ yī diǎn. Xiǎo de cóng xiǎwǔ sān diǎn kāi dào wǎnshāng jiǔ diǎn.

SITI: Xièxié. David, nǐ xiǎng yóuyǒng ma?
DAVID: Xiāng. Búguò, wǒ yǒu yǐxiān è. Zánmen xiān chǐ wū fán, hǎo bù hǎo?
SITI: Hǎo ba. Jì diǎn chí?
DAVID: Yī diǎn, zěnme yàng?
SITI: Hǎo de. Nǎmè, zánmen sì diǎn qù yóuyǒng, xíng ma?
DAVID: Xíng.
David: How about one o'clock?
Sm: That's fine. In that case, shall we go swimming at four o'clock?
David: OK.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fandian</td>
<td>饭店</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youyong chi</td>
<td>游泳池</td>
<td>swimming pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duibuqi</td>
<td>对不起</td>
<td>I'm sorry/Excuse me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meiguansi</td>
<td>没关系</td>
<td>It doesn't matter/It's all right/It's OK (lit. 'not matter')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nimende</td>
<td>你们的</td>
<td>your/yours [plural]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da de</td>
<td>大的</td>
<td>the large one/the big one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiaode</td>
<td>小的</td>
<td>the small one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyi</td>
<td>可以</td>
<td>may/could/can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gousu</td>
<td>告诉</td>
<td>to tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shijian</td>
<td>时间</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangran</td>
<td>当然</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kai</td>
<td>开</td>
<td>to be open/to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiawu</td>
<td>下午</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanshang</td>
<td>晚上</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youyong</td>
<td>游泳</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td>to be hungry/hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zamen</td>
<td>咱们</td>
<td>we/us [colloquial term]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xian</td>
<td>先</td>
<td>first of all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wufen</td>
<td>午饭</td>
<td>lunch [lit. 'noon meal']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>那么</td>
<td>in that case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haobuhao?</td>
<td>好不好?</td>
<td>Is it all right?/Is it OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haoba</td>
<td>好吧</td>
<td>all right/fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingma?</td>
<td>行吗?</td>
<td>Is it OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing</td>
<td>行</td>
<td>to be OK/can do/will do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 2

8 Use of you

You means 'to have'. In English, you say There is a library at the university; but in Chinese, this sentence becomes ‘The university has a library’ because there is no ‘there-is/are’ construction in the Chinese language. For example:

Zhe ge fandian you san ge can tang.
Lit. This hotel have three restaurants.
There are three restaurants in this hotel.

Womeinde gongs yiu liu ge Zhongguoren.
Lit. Our company have six Chinese people.
There are six Chinese people in our company.

9 Use of duibuqi

When the phrase duibuqi is used to apologize, it means ‘I'm sorry’; and when it is used to attract someone's (usually a stranger's) attention, it means ‘Excuse me’. If someone says duibuqi as an apology, one of the appropriate things to say in response is Mei guanxi (It doesn't matter). For example:

A: Duibuqi. Wo mei you kafei.  
I'm sorry. I haven't got coffee.
B: Mei guanxi. Cha ye xing.  
It doesn't matter. Tea will do.

10 Use of keyi

Another way of making your request more polite when asking for information, or permission to do something, from other people is to use keyi (could/can/may) before the verb. For example:

Ni keyi gousu wo ni jiao shenme ma?  
Could you tell me what your name is?
Wo keyi qu Zhongguo ma?  
May I go to China?

11 Verbs used as adjectives

Some verbs (mostly verbs consisting of two syllables), without changing their forms, can be used in front of nouns as adjectives to modify nouns. For example:
### Verb Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kāimén</td>
<td>to be open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒuyōng</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiēshào</td>
<td>to introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāimén shìjiān</td>
<td>opening hour/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒuyōng chí</td>
<td>swimming pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiēshào xìn</td>
<td>letter of introduction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 12 Use of fān

The word fān means 'food' or 'meal'. One of the common greetings among neighbours is Nǐ chī fān le mà? (Have you eaten?). If you have had your meal, you say Chī le (lit. 'Eat already'); and if you have not had your meal, you say Měi chī (lit. 'Not eat'). The word fān is used to form the following expressions we have come across so far:

- **zǎofān** (breakfast) comes from zǎoshāng (morning) and fān
- **wǎnfān** (supper/dinner) comes from wānshāng (evening) and fān
- **zhōngfān** or wūfān (lunch) comes from zhōngwǔ (noon) and fān

#### 13 Yes/no question Hǎo bù hǎo?

The question Hǎo bù hǎo? (lit. 'Good not good?'), is identical in meaning to Hǎo mà? (Is it all right?). All questions ending with mà can be rephrased according to the pattern below:

(Subject) + verb or verb-adjective + bù + repetition of the previous verb

For example:

Nǐ shì Zhōngguórén mà? becomes Nǐ shì bù shì Zhōngguórén?
Are you Chinese?

(Nǐ) è mà? becomes (Nǐ) è bù è? Hungry?

The reply for the first question above is still Shí de for 'Yes' and Bù shí for 'No'. The reply for the second question is È for 'Yes' and Bù è for 'No'. Note that (a) the subject can sometimes be omitted; and (b) the verb or verb-adjective after bù must be the same as the one before bù. If there are two verbs in one question such as

Nǐ xiāng hě kāfěi mà? Would you like to have a coffee?

verb¹ verb²

the pattern becomes '(Subject) + verb¹ + bù + verb¹ + verb² + object'. The above question thus becomes:

Nǐ xiāng bù xiāng hě kāfěi?
verb¹ verb¹ verb²

If the verb requires méi as its negation word, méi is used instead of bù. For example:

Nǐ yǒu kāfěi mà? becomes Nǐ yǒu méi yǒu kāfěi? Do you have some coffee?

#### 14 Affirmative sentences +.. xíng mà?, .. hǎo mà? or .. zénmē yāng?

One way of making a suggestion and then seeking agreement or asking for permission is to add one of the following phrases - xíng mà?/xíng bù xíng?, hǎo mà?/hǎo bù hǎo? (Is it OK/Is it fine?) and Zénmē yāng? (How about ..?) - to affirmative sentences. Most of the time, the above phrases are interchangeable. Just remember that .. xíng mà/xíng bù xíng can be used for asking for permission as well as making a suggestion whereas .. hǎo mà?/hǎo bù hǎo? and .. zénmē yāng? are only used for making a suggestion. For example:

Wǒ wānshāng lù diān bàn lái, xíng mà?
I'm coming at half past six in the evening. Is that OK?

Wǒmen shì'ér diān chǐ wūfān, hǎo mà?
Let's have lunch at twelve, shall we?

Bā diān, zénmē yāng?
How about eight o'clock?

#### 15 Omission of the second syllable in a two-syllable verb

Verbs such as yǒuyōng (to swim), kāimén (to be open) are two-syllable verbs. The second syllable, i.e. yǒng in yǒuyōng, měn in kāimén, is often omitted (a) in a reply to the question where the verb in its full form has already been mentioned; and (b) when the phrase cóng .. dào .. (from .. to ..) is used. For example:

A: Nǐ yǒuyōng le mà?
Did you swim?

B: Yǒu le. Wǒ cóng liǎng diān yǒu dào sì diān.
Yes, I did. I swam from two o'clock to four o'clock.
A: Cántíng kāimén ma?
Is the dining-room open?

B: Kāi. Cóng liù diànn kái dào jiǔ diànn bān.
Yes. It opens from six to half past nine.

Note that the one-syllable verb always occurs before dào in the phrase cón... dào (from ... to ...), with the exception of shì (to be) which is placed before cón. For example:

Wánfán shì cón gong liù diànn dào shì diànn.
Dinner is from six to ten.

Yǒuyòngh chì cón liàng diànn kái dào wǔ diànn bān.
The swimming pool opens from two to half past five.

16 Tone of níménđe

The word mén carries the second tone in isolation. When it is added to nǐ to form nímen (you plural), mén becomes toneless. When the toneless de is added to nímen to form níménđe (your/yours' plural), the second tone comes back to mén. Thus we have níménđe. This rule of tone change applies to wóménđe (our/ours), táménđe (their/theirs), etc.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Solve the problems:

(a) You want to ask the receptionist in your hotel some questions but the receptionist does not know that you are present. To attract his/her attention, what do you say?
(b) What do you say if you want to find out what time the swimming pool opens?
(c) You are late for your appointment. What do you say if you want to apologize?

Exercise 7

Use complete sentences to state the times at which you usually do the following:

(a) to have lunch at 12:30
(b) to go swimming at 4:00pm
(c) to call her 'Xiao Li'
Characters

1 Learning to write:

(a) Xiāng (to want)

Xiāng is a rather difficult character. The two major parts are the top and bottom parts. Let us look at the top part, which consists of the left part and the right part. The top left part 木 is called the 'wood radical' and is pronounced mù, meaning 'wood'. The top right part 目, which is also pronounced mù, is a formal term for 'eye'. The bottom part 心 is pronounced xīn, meaning 'heart'.

Many characters in the Chinese language that involve the working of one's mind have the 'heart radical' in them. Perhaps in the old days, it was thought that the heart was used for thinking.

By learning xiāng, we have in effect learnt three other characters. They are:

木 mù wood
日 mù eye
心 xīn heart

(b) Men [plural particle]

The suffix men is added to wǒ, nǐ and tā to form plurals wǒmen (we), nǐmen (you) and tāmen (they):

门 men

2 Recognizing important signs

Below are two important signs to remember: one is fàndiàn (hotel) and the other is cāntíng (restaurant/dining-room):

饭 店

fan diàn

餐饮
cān tíng

The character for 饭 in fàndiàn means 'food' or 'meal'. The left part 食 is called the 'food radical'. The character for 店 in 店 means 'shop' or 'store'. Perhaps in previous times, the place you went for food also provided accommodation. However, although the term fàndiàn these days refers to hotels most of the time, you can sometimes find some restaurants which are called fàndiàn.

Since you now recognize the characters for fàndiàn, you may recognize the following sign. Give it a try!

北京饭店

It is 'the Beijing Hotel'. 
Exercise 12

Put the following characters in the right order to form a meaningful sentence, and then translate the sentence into English.

Reading/listening comprehension

1. Read the following dialogue carefully and then answer the multiple-choice questions by ticking the most appropriate phrase. If you have the recording, listen to the dialogue first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the multiple-choice questions by ticking the most appropriate phrase:

Chen Guangmeng and Xu Xunfeng share the same office at work. They are planning to do something together.

Chen Guangmeng: Ni jintian hang ma?
Xu Xunfeng: Bu tai hang. Weishenme?
Chen Guangmeng: Zanmen qu youyong, hao ma?
Xu Xunfeng: Hao zhiyi. Buguo, wo xianzai hen e.
Chen Guangmeng: Name, zanmen xian qu chi wufen. Canting ji diann kaimen?
Xu Xunfeng: Shi'er diann ban.
Chen Guangmeng: Hai you shiwen fenzhong kaimen.
Xu Xunfeng: Shi'er diann shisi qu chi wufen, xing ma?
Chen Guangmeng: Xing. San diann qu youyong, zenme yang?
Xu Xunfeng: Hao de.

C Xu Xunfeng xiang xian gan (‘do’) shenme?
(a) he kaifei (b) youyong (c) chi wufen

D Canting ji diann kaimen?
(a) shi yi diann han (b) shi’er diann sanshi (c) shi’er diann

E Xianzai ji diann le? (at the time when they talk)
(a) shi’er diann yi ke (b) shi’er diann ershiwu (c) shi’er diann ershi

F Tamen ji diann qu youyong?
(a) liang diann han (b) san diann (c) san diann shif fen

2. Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks. If you have the recording, listen first, and then add on the correct tone marks:

(a) huijian see you later
(b) canting dining-room
(c) duibuqi I’m sorry/Excuse me
(d) da de the large one

Vocabulary

jintian today
hao zhiyi good idea

Questions

A Xu Xunfeng jintian hang ma?
(a) hen hang (b) bu hen hang (c) bu hang

B Chen Guangmeng xiang gan (‘do’) shenme?
(a) youyong (b) chi wufen (c) he kaifei
5 Jiārén hé péngyou 家人和朋友
Family and friends

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- describe your family and ask about someone else's family
- ask and respond to questions regarding one's occupation
- use present continuous tense
- ask after someone
- recognize and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Gàosu wǒ nǐde qìngkuāng 告诉我你的情况
Tell me about yourself

Lin Shaotang left China for America when he was only sixteen. Now, he is in his late sixties, and is currently in Sichuan province visiting his younger sister Lin Yingmei for the first time since he left China. Yingmei has told him a lot about herself and her family, and now she wants to find out about her brother.

YINGMÉI: Zhigāng zài shàng zhōngxué ma?
SHÀOTĀNG: Bù shì. Tā yǐjīng shì dá xuèshēng le.
YINGMÉI: Zhēn de? Tā xué shénme zhuānyè?
SHÀOTĀNG: Guǎnlǐ.
SHÀOTĀNG: Hǎo de. Méilín yǐjīng dāng māma le. Zhè shì tā zhāngfu, Línfù…

YINGMÉI: Zhìguāng zài shàng zhōngxué ma?
SHÀOTĀNG: Hǎo ba. (He goes to fetch some photos from his bag) Zhè shì wǒ tāitāi, Yīlǐshābái. Tā shì Měiguórén.
YINGMÉI: Tā hén piāoliang. Tā bái gōngzuò ma?
SHÀOTĀNG: Bù gōngzuò le. Wǒmen dōu tuǐxiū le.
YINGMÉI: (pointing at two people in one photo) Zhè liǎng gè shì bù shì nǐmén de háizi?

YINGMÉI: Zhīgāng zài shàng zhōngxué ma?
SHÀOTĀNG: Bù shì. Tā yǐjīng shì dà xuéshēng le.
YINGMÉI: Zhēn de? Tā xué shénme zhuānyè?
SHÀOTĀNG: Guǎnlǐ.
SHÀOTĀNG: Hǎo de. Méilín yǐjīng dāng māma le. Zhè shì tā zhāngfu, Línfù…


YINGMÉI: Zhīgāng zài shàng zhōngxué ma?
SHÀOTĀNG: Bù shì. Tā yǐjīng shì dà xuéshēng le.
YINGMÉI: Zhēn de? Tā xué shénme zhuānyè?
SHÀOTĀNG: Guǎnlǐ.

YINGMÉI: It's your turn to tell me about yourself, elder brother.
SHÀOTĀNG: OK. (He goes to fetch some photos from his bag) This is my wife, Elizabeth. She is American.
YINGMÉI: She is very beautiful. Is she still working?
Shaotang: No, she no longer works. Both of us have retired.

Yingmei: (pointing at two people in one photo) Are these two your children?

Shaotang: Yes. They have Chinese names. This is our son, Zhigang, and this is our daughter, Meilin.

Yingmei: Is Zhigang at secondary school?

Shaotang: No. He is already a university student.

Yingmei: Really? What subject does he study?

Shaotang: Management.

Yingmei: That's very interesting. Tell me about Meilin.

Shaotang: OK. Meilin has already become a mother. This is her husband, Linfu . . .

Vocabulary

gège 老哥哥 elder brother
líndao 轮到 it is [somebody's] turn to . . .
quēngkuàng 情况 situation/present condition
tàitai 太太 wife/Mrs
Yílǐshēn bāi 伊丽莎白 Elizabeth
pīnliàng 美丽 to be beautiful/beautiful
dōu 都 all
tuíxiū 退休 to retire/retired
húizi 孩子 children
míngzi 名字 name
wǒmen de 我们的 out/ours
érzi 儿子 son
nǚ'ěr 女儿 daughter
zài 在 [grammar word, see Note 8]
shàng 上 to go/to to attend
zhōngxuè 中学 secondary/middle-school
da xuéshèng 大学生 university student [lit. 'big school student']
xué 学 to learn/to study
zhūnányè 专业 subject/major
guǎnlì 管理 management/to manage
yǒu yìsi 有意思 to be interesting [lit. 'have meaning']
gěi 给 for/to/to for
jiǎngjiāng 讲讲 to tell [in a sense of narrating]
zhāngfu 丈夫 husband
dāng 当 to become/to act as
māma 妈妈 mother/mum

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Kinship terms

Kinship terms in the Chinese language are more complicated than in English. In addition to those terms in the dialogue, below are some other frequently used kinship terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bàba</td>
<td>dad/father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiéjie</td>
<td>elder sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didi</td>
<td>younger brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mèimei</td>
<td>younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎimai</td>
<td>grandmother (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yéye</td>
<td>grandfather (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shìshíu</td>
<td>uncle (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngu</td>
<td>aunt (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wài pão/lǎolao</td>
<td>grandmother (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wài gōng/lǎoye</td>
<td>grandfather (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìjiù</td>
<td>uncle (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ài yí</td>
<td>aunt (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the repeated words do not carry any tones. The above terms can be used both to refer to someone and to address someone. For example:

Wǒde māma shì zhōngxué láoshi. term of reference
My mother is a secondary-school teacher.

Xièxié nǐ, gège. term of address
Thank you, elder brother.

If you have more than one elder brother, say three, they are called and referred to as:

dà gē (lit. 'big brother') the eldest brother
ér gē the second elder brother
sān gē the third elder brother

The third elder brother, if you have only three, can also be called and referred to as xìāo gē (little elder brother). The same principle applies to other kinship terms such as jiéjie (elder sister). However,
one usually calls one's younger sister(s) or brother(s) by their first names instead of mèimei or didi.

2 Foreign names

Most foreign names, including personal names and place names, are translated according to their sounds. Some foreign names have standard translations. For example, 'David' is Dàwéi, 'Mary' is Má, 'London' is Lúndão, etc.

3 Omission of de from wòde, nide and tāde

The word de is most likely to be omitted from wòde (my), nide (your), tāde (his/her), etc. if the noun that follows it is a kinship term. However, if one-syllable adjectives such as hāo, lāo are used before the noun, de cannot be omitted. For example:

Wò tāitai bù hù shuò Yingwén.
My wife can't speak English.

Wòde hāo dìdì hēn cōngmíng.
My good younger brother is very clever.

4 Titles used to refer to one's spouse

In mainland China, the term àiren (lit. 'love person') is used both in spoken and written Chinese to refer to both 'husband' and 'wife'. The formal term for 'husband' is zhāngfù and 'wife' is qízi. The terms tāitai and xiansheng can mean 'Mrs' and 'Mr' in one context and 'wife' and 'husband' in another context (xiansheng can also be used to refer to one's teacher). In Hong Kong, Taiwan and other international Chinese communities, the terms tāitai and xiansheng are widely used to mean 'wife' and 'husband'. Since most married Chinese women keep their maiden names, it is thus inappropriate to use tāitai (Mrs) to address a married woman (see Note 2 of Lesson 1 for other titles).

5 Use of lúndão

The construction Lúndão + pronoun + verb + le can be broadly translated as 'It is somebody's turn to do something'. Note that le is used in this construction to indicate that it is already somebody's turn to do something. For example:

Lúndão wò zuò fān le. It's my turn to cook.
Lúndão tā yóuyǒng le. It's her turn to swim.

6 Construction shì bù shì

An alternative to the ... shì ... ma? question is ... shì bù shì ...? (see Note 13 of Lesson 4). For example:

Nǐ shì Wáng Ling ma? becomes Nǐ shì bù shì Wáng Ling? (Are you Wang Lin?)

7 Use of qingkuāng

Words like qingkuāng (situation/present condition), which are very vague in meaning, are often used in Chinese to express the English equivalents of 'yourself', 'about', 'things', etc. For example:

Qíng gào su wǒ tāitai de qíngkuāng.
Please tell me about your wife.

Qíngkuāng bù hāo.
Things are not good.

8 Continuous tense particle zài

In Chinese, the continuous tense, i.e. 'somebody is/was doing something', is indicated by the grammar word zài (or zhēngzài) which is placed before the verb. Depending on the context, sentences with zài or zhēngzài can refer either to something which is happening at present (habitual activity) or to something which is happening at the very moment when the sentence is uttered. For example:

Nǐ bābà hǎi zài gōngzuò ma? Is your father still working?
Wǒ zhēngzài chī wūfān. I am having my lunch.

However, you must use zài, not zhēngzài, in the following two cases:

(a) when the negating word bù is used;
(b) when an adverb such as hái (still) is used.

For example:
9 Construction ... bù ... le

The construction ... bù + verb + le conveys the meanings of '... no longer/not ... any more'. Often, the verbs being negated are verbs indicating habitual behaviour. For example:

Ta taitai bù gōngzuò le.

His wife no longer works.

Wō bù xiāng qù Zhōngguó le.

I don't want to go to China any more.

10 Use of dōu

This word, always placed after the pronoun, can convey the meanings of 'both' or 'all' depending on the context. For example:

Tāmén dōu xiāng xiān chī wūfān.

They all want to have lunch first.

Wō hé wō zhāngfù dōu tuíxū le.

Lit. I and my husband both have been retired.

Both my husband and I are retired.

To say 'none of us ...', or 'neither ...', simply add the negation word before the verb:

Tāmén dōu bù xiāng xiān chī wūfān.

None of them wants to have lunch first.

Wō hé wō zhāngfù dōu bù gōngzuò le.

Neither I nor my husband works any more.

11 Use of the verb shàng

The verb shàng (to go to) is interchangeable with qù (to go to) in most cases. The main difference is that shàng is more colloquial and informal. For example:

A: Ni shàng/qù nár? Where are you going?
B: Shàng/qù cāntīng. Dining-room.

However, shàng must be used in the following:

shàng xué to go to school (any school)
shàng jiē to go to the town
(lit. 'go to the street')

When le is used after shàng xué or shàng xiāoxué, it means 'to have started school':

A: Nǐde érzi shàng (xiāo)xué le ma? B: Méi shàng.

Has your son started school yet? Not yet.

Let us see the difference between shàng and qù in the following sentences:

Jane yijing shàng xiāoxué le.

Jane has started primary school.

Jane yijing qù xiāoxué le.

Jane has gone to the primary school. [She may be a pupil, a teacher there or she may have gone there for a visit.]

You may have noticed that when the words xiǎo (small), zhōng (middle/medium) and dà (big/large) precede xué (to study), we get:

xiāoxué primary school
zhōngxué secondary school/middle school
dàxué university

If we add the word shēng (i.e. one who studies) to xué, we have the noun xuēshēng (student). If we add xiǎo, zhōng and dà to xuēshēng, we have: xiǎo xuēshēng (primary-school pupil), zhōng xuēshēng (secondary-school student) and dà xuēshēng (university student). Note that shēng has become neutral tone in the above noun phrases.

12 To negate yǒu yìsi

To negate yǒu yìsi, the negation word méi must be used. You can say either méi yǒu yìsi or méi yìsi (with yǒu omitted) to mean 'to be not interesting' or 'to be boring'. If adverbs such as hén (very) are used, (a) they must be placed before the negation word; and (b) yǒu is always omitted. For example:

Zhè běn shū méi yǒu yìsi. This book is not interesting.
Zhè ge rén hén méi yìsi. This person is very boring.
**13 Use of ăi**

When ăi is used before personal pronouns, it can mean ‘for/to somebody’ or ‘to be for/to somebody’. If it means ‘for/to somebody’, the ăi phrase is placed before the verb. For example:

Găi wō jiēshāo yīxià nǐ tǎitài, hào ma?
Lit. To me introduce your wife, is it OK?
Will you introduce your wife to me please?

If it means ‘to be for/to somebody’, the sentence order is similar to English. For example:

Zhē hēi kāfei ăi nǐ. This cup of coffee is for you.

To convey the meaning ‘to tell somebody about something’, use the construction ăi somebody + jiāngjiang + something. For example:

Găi nǐ yēye jiāngjiang nǐde qǐngkuàng ba.
Lit. To your grandpa tell your present situation.
Please tell your grandpa about yourself.

**Exercises**

**Exercise 1**

Match the Chinese kinship terms on the left with their English equivalents on the right:

1 jiejie  5 měimei (a) elder brother (e) grandfather
2 didi  6 àiyi (b) elder sister (f) grandmother
3 gége  7 nǎinai (c) younger sister (g) uncle
4 yēye  8 shūshū (d) younger brother (h) aunt

**Exercise 2**

Change the following sentences into the present continuous tense using zài and then translate them into English:

(a) Wǒ māma hē kāfei.
(b) Yìngměi chī zǎofán ma?
(c) Tā bù yǒuyòng.
(d) Nǐ bāba gōngzuò ma?

**Exercise 3**

Fill in the blanks using qù or shàng:

(a) Nǐ àirén (spouse) ________ nár le?
(b) Wōmén de érzi zài ________ dàxué.
(c) Tāmén xià ge xíngqí ________ Zhōngguó.
(d) Nǐde nǐ’ér ________ xiăoxué le mā?

**Exercise 4**

Answer the following questions in Chinese regarding Dialogue 1:

(a) Shàotáng jiéhūn le mā?
(b) Shéi shì Shàotáng de táltài?
(c) Shàotáng de táltài shì nà guó rén?
(d) Shàotáng hē (‘and’) tāde táltài yǒu háizi mā?
(e) Tāmén de háizi jiào shénme?
(f) Zhīgāng shì bù shì zhōng xuéshēng?
(g) Yìngměi shì shéi?

**Exercise 5**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Lào Zāng jià běi de shāng zài diǎnshān hú diào le?
(b) Tāmen de háizí jiào jīng pīn jí yǒu bā diào le?
(c) Shí shì zhōngxīn de shāng zài jiào yǒu mǎi zài bā diào le?

**Dialogue 2**

**Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò? 你干什么工作?**

**What do you do?**

Mǐăo Lān and Liū Xiāohóng are good friends. When Mǐăo Lān is on a business trip in Shēnzhēn, Liū Xiāohóng, who lives in Guăngzhōu, makes a special trip to Shēnzhēn to meet Mǐăo Lān.
MIAO LAN: I've heard that you've changed jobs. What are you doing now?
LIU XIAOHONG: Tourist guide.
MIAO LAN: In which company?
LIU XIAOHONG: Guangzhou Tourist Bureau.
MIAO LAN: Wonderful.
LIU XIAOHONG: Are you still working for China Silk Trading Company?
MIAO LAN: Yes, I like this job very much.
LIU XIAOHONG: Are your parents well?

Notes to Dialogue 2

14 Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò?

If you want to ask someone what job he/she is doing, you say: Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò? (lit. ‘You do what job?’). In a context where the conversation centres around jobs, the above sentence can be
translated as 'What are you doing?' However, if you want to know literally what someone is doing at the very moment of your speech, you say 你的干什么 (What are you doing?). Look at the different answers to these questions:

A: 你的干什么 (What are you doing?)  
B: 我是小学老师.  (I'm a primary school teacher.)
A: 林林，你的干什么 (What are you doing, Linlin?)  
B: 我在吃饭. (I'm having my dinner.)

15 Use of zai

In terms of character representation, this zai is the same as the continuous tense indicator zai, which must be placed before the verb (see Note 8 above). However, this zai can mean 'to be at/in' or simply 'at/in' and is always placed before the noun in affirmative sentences or before the question words in questions. For example:

Wǒ fān zai Zhōngguό.  My parents are in China.  
Nǐ zhū zai nǎr?  Where do you live?

Most verbs follow prepositional phrases. Exceptions to this rule are the verbs 住 (to live) and 呆 (to stay), which can be followed by or preceded by prepositional phrases:

Tā jiějie zhū zài Xi'an.  Her elder sister lives in Xi'an.

To negate the first sentence above, put the negation word 不 in front of the verb 住, and to negate the second sentence above, put 不 in front of 在:

Tā jiějie bù zhū zài Xi'an.  Her elder sister does not live in Xi'an.

Tā jiějie bù zài Xi'an zhū.  Her elder sister does not live in Xi'an.

In English, you say I work for ICI, and in Chinese, you can say:  
Wǒ zài ICI gōngzuō.  
Lit. I at ICI work.

16 More on measure words

So far, we have learnt two measure words: 个 before people, swimming pools, restaurants, etc.; and 饼 before drinks. In Dialogue 2, we have a new measure word, 间, which is often used before companies, organizations, shops, restaurants, etc. For example:

zhè jiā fandian hěn hǎo.  
This hotel is very good.

Wǒ bù zài zhè jiā gōngsi gōngzuō.  
I'm not working for this company.

The noun 天 (day) is one of the few exceptions to the rule of using measure words between numbers and nouns. No measure word is needed between a number and 天. Thus we say, for example, 三天 (three days) not 三 个 天. When 三天 is used in sentences, it can mean 'for three days'. For example:

Wǒ zài Bēijīng dài le sān tiān.  
I stayed in Beijing for three days.

17 Showing concern over someone else's parents

It is very common among Chinese people to enquire about each other's parents, especially their health. The commonly used expression is 你的父母的健康吗? (lit. 'Your parents' health is good?'). Sometimes, 的 is omitted.

18 More on question word 间

We saw this question word previously in Lesson 4 when it was used to ask about the time. This question word can also be used to ask other number-related questions. However, you must remember that whenever this question word is used, the questioner expects a small number (less than twenty) in the reply. For example:

A: 你是住在北京多久了?

How many days are you staying in Beijing for?

B: Liáng tiān.  
Two days.
22 Another use of hui

The hui which we saw earlier in Lesson 2 means 'to be able to' or 'can'. Another meaning of hui is to express one's willingness to do something or to predict that something is likely to happen. When hui means 'will', de follows it in short replies or occurs at the end of the sentence. For example:

A: Ni hui jiandao Liú Xiáoméi ma?
Will you see Liú Xiaoméi?
B: Hui de.
Yes, I will.
Ta hui lái chī wǎnfàn de.
He will come for dinner.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Translate the following sentences into English, differentiating between zài ('to be at/in', or 'at/in') and zài (continuous tense indicator):

(a) Ta bù zhù zài Bēijīng.
(b) Ni fūmǔ hái zài gōngzuò ma?
(c) Mā Lán zài chī zǎofàn.
(d) Wáng Lín zài Bēijīng Fǎdiǎn gōngzuò.

Exercise 7

Change the following statements into questions using ji and paying particular attention to the underlined words:

Example: Bēijīng Fǎdiǎn yǒu sān gē cǎnfǐng. → Bēijīng Fǎdiǎn yǒu jī ge cǎnfǐng?
(a) Lǎo Wáng yǒu sān gē háizi.
(b) Wǒ zài Bēijīng Fǎdiǎn zhù le wǔ tiān.
(c) Tā hé le liǎng bēi kǎfēi.
(d) Lǐ Píng yǒu sì ge gége.
Exercise 8

Based on what we have learnt in this lesson, what do you say on the following occasions in Chinese:

(a) You want to ask your Chinese friend if she has time to go swimming.
(b) Your Chinese friend wants to invite you to a party but unfortunately you don't have time, so you apologize, saying ...
(c) You want to ask a Chinese person what job he does.
(d) You want to ask your Chinese friend to pass on your regards to her parents.

Exercise 9

Fill in the blanks with appropriate measure words if necessary:

(a) Wǒ zài Shànghǎi dǎi le shí ______ tian.
(b) Zhè liǎng ______ rén hěn méi yísi.
(c) Nǐ zài nà ______ gōngsī gōngzuò?
(d) Wǒ mén de dà xué yǒu yī ______ yóuyōng chí.
(e) Tā hě le sān ______ kāfèi.

Exercise 10

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) I like my work very much.
(b) I want to go to visit my parents.
(c) Will he come to visit me?
(d) Fang Shu works for the Beijing Tourist Bureau.
(e) Where do you live?

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Verb(s) kàn (to see/read/watch) and xǐhuan (to like)

Exercise 11

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using characters:

(a) I want to go to China.
(b) Where does she want to go?

If you travel in China, especially on your own, and would like some help with your rail tickets, flight tickets or other practical matters,
the best place to contact is lùyóu jú (tourist bureau). Thus, the following sign could be important:

![旅游局](lu-you-ju.png)

**Reading/listening comprehension**

Read the following dialogue first, and then answer the questions in English. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions:

*Yang Ning and Gu Liang, who are very good friends, have not seen each other for a long time. They run into each other, and . . .*

**Yang Ning**: Hǎo jū bù jiàn, Gù Liáng. Tíngshuō nǐ huàn gōngzuò le.

**Gu Liang**: Shǐ de.

**Yang Ning**: Shénme gōngzuò?

**Gu Liang**: Zài Běijīng Síchōu Máoì Gōngsī dāng fángyì.

**Yang Ning**: Yǒu yìsi ma?

**Gu Liang**: Tíng yǒu yìsi. Nǐ zěnme yǎng, Yáng Níng?

**Yang Ning**: Wǒ jíéhūn le.

**Gu Liang**: Zhèn de? Nǐ àiren gàn shénme gōngzuò?

**Yang Ning**: Tā shì xiǎoxué láoshi. Nǐ xiǎng rènshì tā ma?

**Gu Liang**: Dāngrán xiāng.

**Yang Ning**: Jīntiān wǎnshāng nǐ yǒu shūjiān ma?

**Gu Liang**: Kòngpà méi yǒu.

**Yang Ning**: Míngtiān wǎnshāng ne?

**Gu Liang**: Míngtiān wǎnshāng nǐ shūjiān.

**Yang Ning**: Nàme, nǐ lái wǒ men jiā chǐ wǎnfàn.

**Gu Liang**: Tài hǎo le. Xièxiè.

**Vocabulary**

fānyì  translator/interpreter  mingtiān  tomorrow

ài lèn  spouse [lit. 'love person']

**Questions**

A. What is Gu Liang’s current occupation?
B. Who is Gu Liang’s employer?
C. What is the surprise news from Yang Ning?
D. What does Yang Ning’s wife do as a job?
E. When and where is Gu Liang going to meet Yang Ning’s wife?
6 Riqī hé tiānqì
日期和天气
The date and the weather

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
• say the days of the week, dates, months of the year and years
• use time expressions appropriately
• find out information regarding dates and days
• use the question words shénme shíhou, duō jiǔ and hǎishi
• make simple comments on the weather
• recognize and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Jǐntiān shì xīngqì ji? 今天是星期几?
What day is it today? 

Below is a dialogue in a classroom between a teacher and her pupils in a primary school in China

Teacher: Jǐntiān shì xīngqì ji?
Pupil A: Jǐntiān shì xīngqì'èr.
Teacher: Yī ge xīngqì yǒu jī tiān?
Pupil B: Yī ge xīngqì yǒu qí tiān.
Teacher: Yī nián yǒu jī ge yuè?
Pupil C: Yī nián yǒu shí'èr ge yuè.
Teacher: Míngtiān shì jī hào?
Pupil D: Míngtiān shì yījiùshí yìnián yīyuè shìbā hào.
Teacher: Yī nián yǒu jī ge jījié? Tāmen shì shénme?
Pupil E: Sì ge jījié. Tāmen shì chūntiān, xiàtiān, qiū tiān hé dōngtiān.

Teacher: 今天是星期几?
Pupil A: 今天是星期二.
Teacher: 一个星期有几天?
Pupil B: 一个星期有七天.
Teacher: 一年有几个月?
Pupil C: 一年有十二个月.
Teacher: 明天是几号?
Pupil D: 明天是一九九四年一月十八号.
Teacher: 一年有几个季节? 它们是什么?
Pupil E: 四个季节, 它们是春天, 夏天, 秋天和冬天.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jǐntiān</td>
<td>jǐntiān</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīngqì'èr</td>
<td>xīngqì'èr</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nián</td>
<td>nián</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè</td>
<td>yuè</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngtiān</td>
<td>míngtiān</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hào</td>
<td>hào</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìjiùshí nián</td>
<td>yìjiùshí nián</td>
<td>1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīyuè</td>
<td>yīyuè</td>
<td>January [lit. 'one month']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they (inanimate objects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jījié</td>
<td>jījié</td>
<td>season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūntiān</td>
<td>chūntiān</td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàtiān</td>
<td>xiàtiān</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiū tiān</td>
<td>qiū tiān</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hè</td>
<td>hè</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōngtiān</td>
<td>dōngtiān</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Days of the week

To form the words for the first six days of the week, put xingqi in front of the numbers from 'one' to 'six'. The word xingqi literally means 'week' when used by itself but for our purpose here we can think of it as meaning 'weekday':

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xingqiyi</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi'ter</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqis'an</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqiuwu</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqiliu</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Sunday' is xingqi or xingqi'an, ri being a formal term for 'the sun' and tian meaning 'day' or 'sky'.

2 Months of the year

The word for 'month' is yue. Simply place numbers from 'one' to 'twelve' in front of yue:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yi:yue</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er:yue</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>san:yue</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si:yue</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu:yue</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li:yue</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi:yue</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qi:yue</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ji:yue</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi:yue</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi'eryue</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Year and date

If you want to express a particular year, simply say the numbers individually. However, remember to use the word nian (year) at the end to differentiate the year from other numbers. For example:

1994 yi:jiu:jusi nian 1840 yibasiling nian

As in English, the first two numbers of the year can be omitted. For example, '1994' can be shortened to '94', ji:jusi nian. The order for a date including month and year is the reverse of that used in English. The date is thus spoken in the following order: year, month and then date. Also the term hao or ri (the former is the spoken form and the latter the written form for 'date') must be used. For example:

27 December 2001 erlinglingyi nian sh'eryue ershiqi hao/ri.
10 February 1994 yijiu:jusi nian er:yue shi hao/ri.

4 Absence of prepositions in front of time phrases

In English, prepositions such as at, in, on or for must be put in front of the time, the month, the day, the date and expressions of duration. Whilst in Chinese, it is all very simple because such words are not needed in front of time phrases. For example:

Wō māma xingqis'an lái kàn wōmen.
My mother is coming to see us on Wednesday.

Xinhāng li:yuè qì hāo kāishí gōngzuò.
Xinhang starts working on 7 June.

Note that in the above two sentences, both time phrases refer to a particular day or date, so they are put in front of the verb. If the time phrase refers to a period of time, it is usually put after the verb. For example:

Wōzài Lóngdān zhù le liang nian.
verb
I lived in London for two years.

Tā zài Lancaster xuè le bā ge yuè Yīngwén.
verb
He learnt English in Lancaster for eight months.

5 Use of measure word gè before years, months and weeks

In Note 16 of Lesson 5, we saw the omission of the measure word gè in between the number and the noun tian (day). The same principle applies to nian (year), i.e. there is no need to use measure words between the number and the noun nian. For example:

Wō xuè le sān nian Yīngwén. I learnt English for three years.
However, you must use the measure word げ in between the number and the noun 月 (month). For example: 三月 (March). As for 星期 (week), you can either use げ or drop it. Both usages are correct:

```
Tā zài Bēijīng dàile 三 germ xīngqī.
or Tā zài Bēijīng dàile 三 xīngqī.
He/she stayed in Beijing for three weeks.
```

6 More on the question word じ

When じ is used to ask the current day (or day in the near future) and the date, it means ‘which’ rather than ‘how many’. For example:

```
Jintiān shì xīngqī じ?
Lit. Today is weekday which?
What day is it today?
Jintiān shì じ háo?
Lit. Today is which date?
What’s the date today?
```

The question Jintiān shì じ háo? can be replied to with a full answer specifying the year, the month and the date, or by just giving the date, depending on the context:

```
A: Xià ge xīngqīér shì じ háo?
Lit. Next Tuesday is which date?
A: What’s next Tuesday’s date?
B: Èrshíwǔ háo.  B: 25th.
```

To ask questions such as ‘How many days/weeks/months/seasons . . . ?’, the measure word げ must be used between the question word じ and those nouns which require measure word げ in the reply (see Note 5 above). For example:

```
Yì nián yǒu じ ge yuè?
Lit. A year have how many months?
How many months are there in a year?
Nǐ xué le じ nián Zhōngwén?
Lit. You learnt how many years Chinese?
For how many years did you learn Chinese?
```

7 Use of 他

The conjunction word 他 (and) is never used to link two sentences. When two sentences share the same subject (e.g. ‘you’, ‘I’), the subject is omitted in the second sentence and a comma is used. For example:

```
Tā jīn nián èrshí suì, shì dà xuēshēng.
He is twenty this year and he is a university student.
```

The word 他 is only used to link two or more than two nouns, pronouns or noun phrases. Even then, it can be omitted. And, if you want to say ‘somebody and I’, ‘I’ is usually mentioned first in Chinese. For example:

```
Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge gege, yì ge dìdi.
I have two elder brothers and one younger brother.
```

Wǒ 他 Xiǎo Lǐ xǐhuàn yóuyǒng, (è) píng pāng qiú.
Xiao Li and I like swimming and table-tennis.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Look at the following calendars and answer the questions:
(a) Jintiān shì xīngqī じ?

(b) Jintiān shì じ yuè じ háo?

(c) Nǐ じ háo qù Zhōngguó?
Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the measure word 个 when necessary, and then translate the sentences into English:

(a) Xiao Fang zai Shenzhen dai le san ________ tian (three days).
(b) Wo you san ________ yue (three months).
(c) Wo zhangfu xiang zai Zhongguo liyou liang ________ xingqi (two weeks).
(d) Wo di di zai Xi'an gongzuode si ________ nian (four years).
(e) Wang Dongping you wu ________ gege (five elder brothers).
(f) Paul xiang ba ________ yue (August) qu Taiwan.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences from English to Chinese:

(a) For how many years did Feixia live in Guangzhou?
(b) Tomorrow is Thursday.
(c) For how many months did Andrew learn Chinese?
(d) I want to go to China this March.
(e) What is next Friday’s date?
(f) My husband has two younger brothers and one elder sister.

Dialogue 2

Shenme shihou ...? 什么时候 ...?
When ...? ☛

Mick is planning to go to Beijing and he wants to find out what the weather is like. So he is chatting with Li Lu, a Chinese student who comes from Beijing.

Mick: Beijing de dongtian leng ma?
Li Lu: Feichang leng. chang xiaxue.
Mick: Xiati zuome yang?
Li Lu: Qiyou he bayue tebie re.
Notes to Dialogue 2

8 Use of cháng

This adverb, meaning 'often' or 'frequently', is always placed before the verb, and it is often repeated like some one-syllable words. For example:

Ni cháng yóuyǒng ma? Do you often swim?
Andrew chángcháng chūmén. Andrew is frequently away.
Wǒ bù cháng hé kāfê. I don't often drink coffee.

9 Use of zúi

In English, the word most cannot be put in front of every adjective or adverb (e.g. 'the most difficult' but 'the easiest'). However, in Chinese, the word zúi, meaning 'most', can be placed in front of every word or verbal phrase to describe its degree. For example:

XiaoWáng zúi niánqìng. Xiao Wang is the youngest.
Zhe běn shù zúi yǒu yìsì. This book is most interesting.
Tā zúi bù xīhuàn zuòfàn. He dislikes cooking most.

10 More on de after adjectives

One-syllable adjectives such as hǎo (good), lǎo (old), dà (big), etc., can be put before nouns without using de. For example:

hǎo péngyou  good friend
lǎo dà xuéshēng  old university student
dà fándiàn  big hotel

Most two-syllable adjectives such as piàoliáng (beautiful), gáoxìng (happy), etc., when used to modify nouns, require the use of de before the noun. For example:

gáoxìng de yí tiān  a happy day
piàoliáng de fándiàn  beautiful hotel

However, once these adjectives (both one-syllable and two-syllable) are modified by adverbs such as tèbié (extremely), hěn (very), zúi (most), etc., de must be used in between the adjective and the noun. For example:

zúi hǎo de péngyou  best friend
tèbié dà de fándiàn  extremely big hotel
hěn lǎo de dà xuéshēng  very old university student
féicháng piàoliáng de dàyì  very beautiful coat

11 Use of zènme

Although zènme is translated as 'why?' in this context, it is not actually seeking an answer but is used to express surprise. For example:

A: Māma, zánmen jǐ diǎn chǐ fàn? Mum, what time are we going to eat?
B: Zènme, nǐ è le ma? Why? Are you already hungry?

However, zènme can mean 'how come?', which is weaker than wèishénme (why?), which we learnt in Lesson 3. For example:

A: Nǐ jīntiān zènme bù gáoxìng? How come you aren't happy?
B: Wǒ yè bù zhídào. I don't know either.

A: Nǐ wèishénme jīntiān bù shàngxué? Why are you not going to school today?
B: Yīnwèi jīntiān shì xīngqìtiān. Because it's Sunday.

12 Adding of a

In spoken Chinese, especially in southern China, a is frequently attached to some short expressions. It does not carry any specific meaning but merely adds a touch of informality and friendliness.
For example, if someone is knocking on your door, you can say *Shēi'a?* (Who is it?). Also, when you see something beautiful, you can say *Zhēn piàoliang'ā!* (Really beautiful!).

13 **Position of the question words** shén me shí hòu

These question words mean ‘when’. They are used to ask about dates and days, not the actual time. They are usually placed before the verb. For example:

*Nǐ érzi shén me shí hòu qù Xiāng Gāng gōngzuò?*
When is your son going to Hong Kong to work?

*Nǐ māma shén me shí hòu lái Yingguó?*
When is your mother coming to England?

14 **Construction** Jírán ... jiù ...

Jiù usually goes with the expression jírán to mean ‘as ... (then ... )’. It is the same word as the emphatic jiù in Lesson 3 but here it is used differently. The first half of the construction gives a reason, and the second half is either a suggestion or a decision. For example:

*Jírán nǐ tài tài shēn tǐ bù hǎo, nǐ jiù huí jiā ba.*
As your wife is not feeling well, please go home.

*Jírán shí yuè shì zúi hǎo de jǐjié, wǒ jiù shí yuè qù Běi jīng.*
As October is the best season, I shall go to Beijing in October.

15 **Question word** hāishi

Whenever you want to ask a question which gives two or more options, and you want the respondent to specify one or the other, put hāishi in between the last two choices. Thus, hāishi can only be used to raise questions. For example:

*Nǐ shì Yingguórén hāishi Měiguórén?*
Are you British or American?

*Tā xiàng xiàn chī wǔ fàn hāishi xiān yóuyǐng?*
Does she want to have lunch first or swim first?

16 **Question words** duō jiù

The question words duō jiù (how long?) are used if you have no idea at all of duration – for how long the other person is staying in Beijing, for example:

*Nǐ dà sūn zài Běi jīng dài duō jiù?*
How long are you staying in Beijing for?

But if you know that he/she is only staying for a couple of days, weeks, months, etc. you use the question word ji.

17 **Difference between** dāyuè and zuò yóu

The word zuò yóu (about/around) was introduced earlier, in Lesson 2. The difference between zuò yóu and dāyuè is that they occur in different positions in the sentence. Dāyuè is always put in front of the phrase it modifies, whilst zuò yóu always follows the phrase it modifies. For example:

A: *Nǐ dà sūn zài Měiguó dài duō jiù?*
How long do you plan to stay in America?

B: *Dāyuè liàng ge yuè.*
About two months.

*Jiā jiā shì sān shí suì zuò yóu.*
Jiajia is about thirty years old.

**Exercises**

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following expressions into Chinese paying attention to the use of de:

(a) my best friend
(b) extremely big swimming pool
(c) small restaurant
(d) that young and beautiful university student
(e) the oldest man

**Exercise 5**

Convert the following statements into questions using shén me shí hòu (when?) or duō jiù (how long?) paying special attention
to the underlined words, and then translate the sentences into English:
(a) Mick dà suàn míng nián qù Zhōngguó.
(b) Zhāng Jūn zài Táiwān gōngzuò le wǔ nián.
(c) Lǎo Lì de nǚ ér xià ge yuè shàng xué.
(d) Wǒ xiāng zài Shānghǎi dài sān tiān.

Exercise 6
Fill in the blanks using dà yuē or zuò yòu:
(a) Wǒmen dà suàn liù diǎn _______ chǐ wǎnfàn.
(b) A: Nǐ zài Shènzhèn gōngzuò le duō jiǔ?
       B: _______ sān nián bàn.
(c) Wáng jīnglǐ sīshí wǔ suì _______.
(d) Wǒ de Yīngguó péngyou ______ lièyuè lái kàn wǒ.

Exercise 7
Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
(a) Do you want to have lunch at twelve or one o'clock?
(b) Do you often swim?
(c) Why are you unhappy?
(d) Since you are not hungry, I'll eat first.

Characters
1 Learning to write:
(a) Jīntiān shí xīngqītiān (Today is Sunday)

The top part of shí and xīng is very similar. It is called the 'sun radical'. The vertical strokes of the 'sun radical' for shí are longer than the horizontal ones, whilst the horizontal strokes of the 'sun radical' for xīng are longer than the vertical ones.

(b) zài (in/at), jiā (home/family) and lǎo (old)
The word zài consists of six strokes:

Now you know how to write, for example, tā bù zài (She is not in) in characters:

The noun jiā consists of ten strokes:

Note that the top part is the 'roof radical'. Now you know how to write, for example, Wǒ jiā zài Běi jīng (My home is in Beijing) in characters:

The adjective lǎo consists of six strokes:
2 Recognizing some common Chinese family names

Li 李  Wáng 王
Zhāng 张  Liú 刘

Exercise 8

Use the following components (as many times as you like) to form as many characters as you can:

女 口 马 子 也

Reading/listening comprehension ☢️

1 Below is a postcard from Feng Ying, who lives in the United States, to her parents, who live in China. Read it carefully and then answer the questions in Chinese. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions in Chinese.

Vocabulary

qín'aide dear
xié xìn to write a letter
Jiǔjīnshān San Francisco
xiāng nǐmènde missing you

Questions

A Feng Ying shénme shíhou qù Jiǔjīnshān?
B Feng Ying qù Jiǔjīnshān lǐyóu ma?
C Feng Ying qù Jiǔjīnshān gàn shénme?
D Feng Ying dàsuàn zài Jiǔjīnshān dāi duō jiǔ?
E Jiǔjīnshān de xiàtiān zěnme yáng?
F Feng Ying de gēge zhū zài Měiguó ma?

2 Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks. If you have the recording, listen first, and then add on the correct tone marks:

(a) yiyue (January)
(b) sān ge yuē (three months)
(c) tebie da de fándiàn (extremely large hotel)
(d) xīngqī'èr (Tuesday)
7 Mǎi dòngxi (I)
买东西
Shopping (I)

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
• tell someone the price of a product
• ask about prices
• tell the shop-assistant what and how many you want to buy
• do some bargaining
• use the question words duō shǎo
• write more characters and recognize more signs

Dialogue 1
Duō shǎo qián? 多少钱? How much is it? ☑

Anne is from Canada. She is working in Chengdu, capital of Sichuan province in China. Today, she is doing her shopping. She goes into a fruit and vegetable shop where customers are served by shopassistants.

SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?
ANNE: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí xiē shuǐguǒ.
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ kàn, wǒmen yǒu xīnxīn de cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ.
ANNE: Zhèxiē shì shénme?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Lízhī.
ANNE: Duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Wǔ kuài bā máo.
ANNE: Wǒ yào yī jīn lízhī. Cāoméi zēnme mǎi?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Sān kuài líng jǐ fēn yì jīn.

SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ xiǎng mǎi yī xiē guǒ?
ANNE: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī xiē guǒ. Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ.
ANNE: Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ.
ANNE: Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Cāoméi, Hǎinán xiāngjiāo, gè zhòng píngguǒ.

Vocabulary

mǎi 买 to buy
yíxiē 一些 some
shuǐguǒ 水果 fruit
nǐ kàn 你看 have a look [lit. 'you look']
xīnxīn 新鲜 fresh
cāoméi 草莓 strawberry
Hǎinán Dǎo 海南岛 Hainan Island
xiāngjiāo 香蕉 banana
gè zhòng 各种 various kinds
píngguǒ 苹果 apple
zhèxiē 这些 these
lízhī 荔枝 lychee
duō shǎo 多少 how much/how many
qián 钱 money
Duō shǎo qián? 多少钱? How much is it?
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Currency terms

In mainland China and Taiwan, the currency word is yuan, for which the informal term is kuài. One yuan consists of ten jiao, the informal term for which is mao. And one jiao or one mao consists of ten fen. Let us list them separately:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kuài</td>
<td>yuan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mao</td>
<td>jiao</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fen</td>
<td>fen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sign for Chinese yuan is ¥. Let us look at the following prices expressed with informal currency terms:

- ¥ 0.05 wu fen
- ¥ 0.80 ba mao

Note that if there is more than one currency term involved in a price, the last one can always be omitted. Thus, it is correct to express four of the above prices in the following way:

- ¥ 1.50 yi kuai wu
- ¥ 2.95 liang kuai jiu mao wu fen
- ¥ 12.30 shier kuai san mao
- ¥ 6.05 liu kuai ling wu fen

Since most currencies have only two terms (e.g. pounds and pence; dollars and cents), it is very easy to make the mistake of saying bashi fen (eighty fen) for ¥ 0.80, for example. You must remember to say ba mao or ba jiao.

2 Unit of weight

The official unit of weight is gongjin (kilogram). However, jin (half a kilo) is most commonly used in dealing with small quantities of goods, especially in shops. As jin itself is a unit of weight, measure words are not needed in between a number and jin. For example:

- A: Ni yao ji jin pingguo?
- How many half-kilos of apples do you want?

- B: Wo vao bang jin pingguo.
- I want a kilo of apples.

3 Use of place names

Place names (e.g. names of cities and countries) can be used as adjectives in front of nouns. For example:

- Zhongguo fan Chinese food
- Yingguo gongsi British company
- Meiguogu pengyou American friends
- Hainan Dao xiangjiao Hainan bananas
4 Asking the price

The most important phrase to remember is **duō shǎo qián?** You can specify the goods and the quantity. For example:

- **Pingguó duō shǎo qián yì jín?**
  Lit. Apple how much money one jin?
  How much is a half-kilo of apples?

- **Duō shǎo qián yì jín pingguó?**
  Lit. How much money one jin apple?
  How much is a half-kilo of apples?

If the context makes it clear that you are talking about - for example, bananas - you can simply say:

**Duō shǎo qián? or Duō shǎo qián yì jín?**

Another common way of asking the price is **zhénme mái?**, which can be broadly translated as 'How is it sold?' If you want to specify the goods, they should always be placed at the beginning of the question. For example:

- **Lízhi zhénme mái?**
  Lit. Lychee how sell?

5 Difference between **duō shǎo** and **ji**

As we learnt before, when the question word **ji** (how many?) is used, the questioner expects a small quantity (fewer than twenty) in the reply. Another thing to remember about **ji** is that in most cases either a measure word or unit word must be used. **Duō shǎo** (how many?/how much?) does not have such restrictions. For example:

- **Nǐ yào jǐ jīn xiāngjiāo?**
  How many jins of bananas do you want?

- **Nǐ yào duō shǎo xiāngjiāo?**
  What quantity of bananas do you want?

6 Difference between **yào** and **xiāng**

Look at these three sentences:

- **Wǒ yào kāfèi.**
  Lit. I want coffee.

- **Wǒ xiāng hě kāfèi.**
  Lit. I want drink coffee.

The verb **yào** can be followed by nouns or verbs whilst **xiāng** must be followed by another verb if the meaning 'to want' is intended. When **xiāng** is followed by a noun or a sentence, it means 'to miss' or 'to think'. For example:

- **Wǒ xiāng kāfèi.**
  I miss coffee.

- **Wǒ xiāng, tā ěrshí zuòyòu.**
  I think he's about twenty.

There is also a subtle difference in meaning between **yào** and **xiāng**. **Xiāng** is more like the English 'would like' when followed by another verb whilst **yào** is a straightforward 'to want' showing a certain degree of determination. For example:

- **Wǒ xiāng mái yíxiē shuíguò.**
  I'd like to buy some fruit.

- **Wǒ yào mái yíxiē shuíguò.**
  I want to buy some fruit.

7 Verbs **mǎi** and **mài**

Although **mǎi** (to buy) and **mài** (to sell) share the same pronunciation, they differ in tones and character representation. Do not worry if you cannot get the tone right, because the context will always help.

8 Use of **zhào**

This verb has several meanings. The meaning 'to return' is only restricted to situations where someone gives someone else the change. For example:

- **A:** Gěi nǐ wǔ kuài.
  Here is five kuai.

- **B:** Zhào nǐ yī kuài bā máo.
  Here is one kuai and eight mao change.

(A being the customer, and B the shop-assistant.) Remember that **zhào** cannot be used to mean 'to return' other things (e.g. books).
9 Extra vocabulary on fruit

You may find the following words useful:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lìzi</td>
<td>pears</td>
<td>pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xǐngzi</td>
<td>apricots</td>
<td>apricot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chénzi</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júzi</td>
<td>tangerines</td>
<td>tangerine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bōluó</td>
<td>pineapples</td>
<td>pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xǐguā</td>
<td>watermelon</td>
<td>watermelon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 Construction yōu méi yōu

Like . . . shì bù shì . . . ? (see Note 6 of Lesson 5), yōu méi yōu . . . ? is an alternative pattern to . . . yōu . . . ma? For example:

Nǐ yōu Zhōngguó chá ma?

becomes Nǐ yōu méi yōu Zhōngguó chá?

Do you have any Chinese tea?

Exercises

Exercise 1

Look at the following drawings, paying attention to the price next to each drawing, and answer the questions using complete sentences:

(a) 2.75 / yì jīn
(b) 6.00 / yì jīn
(c) 4.65 / yì jīn

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks using yào or xiàng, and in some cases either can be used:

(a) (When asked what David wants to drink, his mum says:)  
   David ______ yì bēi júzi zhī (júzi zhī means 'orange juice').

(b) Wǒ bù ______ hé kāfei.

(c) (In a shop) Wǒ ______ sān jīn cāoméi.

(d) Tā ______ xiān chī wūfān.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) I'd like to buy some Hainan Island bananas.

(b) He doesn't want strawberries.

(c) I bought a kilo of apples

(d) Do you want anything else?
(c) I don’t know how much it is.
(f) A: Here is five kuai.
   B: Here is two mao and five fen change.

Dialogue 2
Tai gui le It’s too expensive

Dale is in Taiwan on a business trip. After a week’s tough negotiation, he suddenly remembers that he wants to do some shopping. So he asks his Chinese colleague Fan Ting.

Dale: Xiao Fan, xingqitian shangdian guanmén ma?
Fan Ting: Bu guanmén. Suoyoude shangdian, yinháng, youju dòu kaimén. Zéme, ni xiàng mài dòngxi ma?
Dale: Shi de. Wo xiàng gēi wò taitai mài ji tiáo zhên sǐ wěijin, gēi xiǎohái hé péngyou mài yixiè liwù.
Fan Ting: Na bù nán. Wo kěyì dài nǐ qù bāihuò shangdian.
Dale: Ni tái hào le. Duò xiè.

(as they could not find everything Dale would like to buy in the big department stores, they decide to go to a nearby market where bargains are to be found. Dale sees a nice silk tie)

Dale: Xiaojie, zhè tiáo lǐngdài zénme mái?
Street-vendor: Liáng bái wūshí kuài yì tiáo.
Dale: Tài gui le.
Street-vendor: Liáng bái kuài, xíng ma?
Dale: Sàn bái wūshí kuài mài liáng tiáo, zénme yàng?
Street-vendor: Hào ba, hào ba.
Dale: Wǒ yào le.

Dale: Xiao, xingqitian shangdian guanmén ma?
Fan Ting: Bu guanmén. Suoyoude shangdian, yinháng, youju dòu kaimén. Zéme, ni xiàng mài dòngxi ma?
Dale: Shi de. Wo xiàng gēi wò taitai mài ji tiáo zhên sǐ wěijin, gēi xiǎohái hé péngyou mài yixiè liwù.
Fan Ting: Na bù nán. Wo kěyì dài nǐ qù bāihuò shangdian.
Dale: Ni tái hào le. Duò xiè.

Dale: Xiaojie, zhè tiáo lǐngdài zénme mái?
Street-vendor: Liáng bái wūshí kuài yì tiáo.
Dale: Tài gui le.
Street-vendor: Liáng bái kuài, xíng ma?
Dale: Sàn bái wūshí kuài mài liáng tiáo, zénme yàng?
Street-vendor: Hào ba, hào ba.
Dale: Wǒ yào le.

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Use of suoyoude . . . dòu . . .

Back in Lesson 5, we learnt the word dòu, which means ‘all’ in the sense of ‘all those who have been mentioned before’. However, if you want to say ‘all the banks’ inclusively, use suoyoude and dòu at the same time. Put suoyoude in front of nouns and dòu in front of verbs. For example:
In Britain, all the banks are closed on Sunday.

All the things are very expensive.

**12 Verbal phrase mǎi dōngxi**

Literally, mǎi dōngxi means ‘to buy things;’ idiomatically, it means ‘to do shopping’. If you want to say ‘to go shopping’, the verb qù (to go) must be used before mǎi dōngxi. Phrases such as yīxiē (some), yīdiān (a little) are inserted in between mǎi and dōngxi. For example:

Wǒ xiānshēng bù xǐhuàn mǎi dōngxi.
My husband does not like going shopping.

Māmā qù mǎi dōngxi le.
Mum has gone shopping.

Tā mǎi le yīxiē dōngxi.
He did some shopping.

**13 Construction gěi . . . mǎi . . .**

In English, you say I buy something for somebody; in Chinese, you say 'for somebody I buy something'. For example:

Tā xiǎng gěi tāde xiǎohái mǎi yīxiē liwù.
Lit. She wants for her children buy some presents.

Wǒ gěi wǒde tāntái mǎi le yì tiáo wèijīn.
Lit. I for my wife bought a scarf.

I bought a scarf for my wife.

**14 Measure word tiáo**

This measure word is used in between a number or pronouns zhē/nà (this/that) and certain nouns (e.g. scarf, tie, trousers). For example:

Zhē tiáo língdài hěn piàoliáng.
This tie is very beautiful.

Tāmǎi le sān tiáo zhēn sī wèijīn.
She bought three pure silk scarves.
18 Use of Xiaojie

As China opens to the west, the term Xiaojie (which is like the French word mademoiselle) is becoming more and more popular to address, for example, female shop-assistants instead of the term tongzhi (comrade). It is also a way of attracting someone’s attention. Xiaojie can also be used as a title to mean ‘Miss’. For example:

Customer: Xiao jie, nimen you caomei ma?
Miss, do you have strawberries?
(On the phone) Wang xiao jie zai ma?
Is Miss Wang in?

19 Wo yao le

This is a commonly used phrase in shops when you have decided that you want to buy something, which can be broadly translated as ‘I’ll take it’.

Exercises

Exercise 4

You tell the shop-assistant that you would like to buy
(a) a pure silk tie
(b) one kilo of bananas
(c) two scarves

Exercise 5

You ask your Chinese friend if he/she can take you to
(a) a department store
(b) a bank
(c) a post-office

Exercise 6

What would you say on the following occasions based on what we have learnt:

(a) A street-vendor approaches you and asks you if you would like a silk scarf; you see the price tag and you think it is too expensive.
(b) After some bargaining, you have decided to make a purchase.
(c) You are in a fruit shop, but the shop-assistant is not aware of your presence. You want to attract her attention and also ask her if they have lychees.
(d) You are new in a city and a colleague of yours has offered to take you shopping; you want to express your gratitude using a more sophisticated expression.

Exercise 7

Complete the following sentences using the expressions in the brackets, and then translate them into English:

(a) Ta ____ (for his girl-friend) mai le yi tiao zhen si weijin.
(b) Wo yinggai qu baihuo shangdian ____ (do some shopping).
(c) Xingquian (all banks) ____ kaimen.
(d) Xiao Wang he le ____ (several cups of) kaifei.
(e) Wo gege hui ____ (bring my mother) kan women.

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Mai dongxi (to go shopping)
(b) Verbs yào (to want/to take) and zǒu (to walk/to leave)

The upper part of yào 要 which is pronounced xi, means 'west' in isolation; and we have learnt the lower part of yào 女 in Lesson 1. It is the 'woman radical' except that here, it is not as thin as it is in hào 好.

2 Recognizing important signs:

shop        bank        post-office

Reading/listening comprehension

Read the following dialogue, and then answer the questions in English below. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions in English.

Bill is going back to Toronto after working in Beijing for a couple of weeks, and he has just done some shopping. A Chinese friend of his, Yang Wen, has come to see him and asks about his shopping.

Bill: Shì de.

Yang Wen: Wǒ kǎi yì kàn kan ma?

Bill: Dāngrán kǎi yì.

Yang Wen: Tàī piàoliang le.

Vocabulary

hěnduō a lot of/many
jiàn (measure word for clothes)
shuíyī night gown [lit. 'sleep clothes']
zhūōbǔ table-cloth
kànkan to take a look

Questions

A What did Bill buy for his wife?
B How much is it?
C What does Yang Wen think of the present Bill has bought for his wife?
D What else did Bill buy?
8 Mǎi dōngxi (II) 买东西
Shopping (II)

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- say some colour words
- make simple comparisons
- ask to borrow things from somebody
- ask someone's opinion about two things
- use phrases containing percentages
- write more characters

Dialogue 1
Nà jiàn hǎo? 哪件好？Which is better?

Paul is studying Chinese at a university in Beijing. Today, he is going shopping with his flatmate Liu Hong. They are looking at some sweaters.

Paul: Xióo Liú, nǐ shuō zhè liǎng jiàn máoyì, nǎ jiàn hǎo?
Liu Hong: Wǒ juéde lù de bì huáng de hǎo. Nǐ chuān nǐ yán sè bǐ jiāo hǎo.
Paul: Hǎo ba, wǒ tīng nǐde.
(Paul has decided to take the green sweater and as he is reaching for his wallet . . .)

Paul: Zào gào! Wǒ wàng le dài qián bāo. Xióo Liú, nǐ kěyí jié gěi wǒ yīxiē qián ma?

Liu Hong: Méi wèntí. Nǐ yào duō shǎo?
Paul: Sānshí kuài, xīng ma?
Liu Hong: Xīng. Gòu ma?
Paul: Gòu le.

Liu Hong: Gēi nǐ.
Paul: Tāi xiè xiè nǐ le. Méngtiān wǒ yídīng huán gěi nǐ qián.


Paul: Hǎo de.

Paul: 小刘，你说这两件毛衣，哪件好？
Liu Hong: 我觉得绿的比黄的好。你穿绿色比较好。
Paul: 好吧，我听你的。

Paul: 糟糕！我忘了带钱包。小刘，你可以借给我一些钱吗？
Liu Hong: 没问题，你要多少？
Paul: 三十块，行吗？
Liu Hong: 行。够吗？
Paul: 够了。
Liu Hong: 给你。
Paul: 太谢谢你了。明天我一定还给你钱。
Liu Hong: 不急。咱们去书店看看，好吗？我想买几本书。
Paul: 好的。

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jiàn</th>
<th>件</th>
<th>[measure word for clothes]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>máoyì</td>
<td>毛衣</td>
<td>sweater/jumper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juéde</td>
<td>觉得</td>
<td>to think/to feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lù</td>
<td>绿</td>
<td>green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi</td>
<td>比</td>
<td>to be compared with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huáng</td>
<td>黄</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuān</td>
<td>穿</td>
<td>to wear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 1

1. Nǐ shuō...

This is one of the ways to ask someone's advice. Literally, nǐ shuō means 'you say' or 'you speak', which can be broadly translated as 'What do you think...?' or 'What would you say...?'. For example:

Nǐ shuō zánmen jì diàn qù yóuyòng?
Lit. You say we what time go swimming?
What time do you think we shall go swimming?

Nǐ shuō Běijīng dà háishì Lúndūn dà?
Lit. You say Beijing big or London big?
What would you say? Is Beijing bigger or is London bigger?

2. Colours

Below are some commonly used colour words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hóng</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>bái</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hēi</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>láng</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above colour words are adjectives. If you want to say 'the red' or 'the blue one', simply add de (see Note 14, Lesson 3) to the appropriate colour adjective. If you want to say 'the white colour', add yánse (colour) or sē (the same sē as in yánse) to the adjective bái (white). For example:

A: Nǐ yào ná zhòng yánse?  A: Which colour do you want?
B: Hóng de. B: The red.
A: Nǐ xiǎohuàn shénme yánse? A: What colour do you like?

If you want to say, for example, 'dark blue' or 'light blue', place shēn (dark) or qiān (light) in front of lán (blue). Thus we have shēn lán or qiān lán.

3. Comparing two things

If you compare A with B and want to say 'A is better than B', or 'A is more beautiful than B', in Chinese you say:

A bǐ B hǎo. A bǐ B piàoliang.

For example:

Lìzhī bǐ píngguǒ guì.
Lychees are more expensive than apples.

Dōngtiān. Běijīng bǐ Lúndūn lěng.
In winter, Beijing is colder than London.

Zhè jiān lǜ máoyí bǐ hēi de hǎo.
This green jumper is better than the black one.

When asking someone's opinion about two things, you list the two things first, and then ask the question in the usual order. For example:

Lǜ máoyí hē hēi máoyí, nà jiān hǎo?
Lit. Green jumper and black jumper. which [measure word] be good? Which is better, the green jumper or the black jumper?
Ni hé ni gége, shéi gāo?
Lit. You and your elder brother who be tall?
Who is taller, you or your elder brother?

4 Use of bijiào
This adverb is very often used in front of adjectives to modify them. It can mean 'relatively', 'quite' or 'rather'. It is one of those favourite words people use when they express their opinions or give advice to somebody so that it does not sound too aggressive or bossy. For example:

Wǒ juéde nǐ chuān hēi yán sè bijiào hǎo.
Lit. I think you wear black colour quite well.
I think black suits you quite well.

Zhōngwén bijiào nán.
The Chinese language is rather difficult.

5 Verb tīng
The verb tīng (to listen to) can be followed by a noun, a phrase or a sentence. For example:

John xihuan tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè.
John likes to listen to Chinese music.

Qǐng tīng tā shuō
Please listen to what he says.

The expression Wǒ tīng nǐ de (lit. 'I listen to yours'), which occurs in Dialogue 1, can be taken to mean 'I'll take your advice'.

6 Verb wàng
This is a very useful word to remember. It is often used together with the past indicator le to mean 'to forgot' or 'to have forgotten'. For example:

Wǒ wàng le gěi xiǎoháí mái liwū.
I forgot to buy presents for the children.

A: Zhōngwén zénme shuō 'lychee'?
How do you say 'lychee' in Chinese?

B: Duìbùqǐ, wǒ wàng le.
Sorry, I forgot.

7 More on the verb dài
In Note 16 of Lesson 7, we came across this verb. In that context, it meant 'to bring' or 'to take' somebody to somewhere. Here, it means 'to bring' or 'to take' something. For example:

Wǒ wàng le dài qiánbāo. I forgot to bring the wallet.
Ni dài qián le ma? Have you got some money on you?

When the verb dài is used without any directional words, it is ambiguous. For example, the sentence Wǒ mèimei dài le yǐxiē shuǐguǒ can mean 'My younger sister brought some fruit' or 'My younger sister took some fruit'. To make it clear that it means 'to bring', you can use the directional word lái either after the verb dài or after the object. For example:

Tā fánmu dài lái yǐxiē Zhōngguó chá.
Her parents brought some Chinese tea.

or Tā fánmu dài le yǐxiē Zhōngguó chá lái.
Her parents brought some Chinese tea.

Note the position of the past indicator le in the above two sentences.

8 Verb jiè
When jiè is used to mean 'to lend', it is almost always used together with the prepositional phrase gěi + somebody (to somebody). For example:

Liu Hong jiè gěi le Paul sānshí kuài qián.
Liu Hong lent thirty yuan to Paul.

Ni kěyǐ jiè gěi wǒ yǐxiē qián ma?
Could you lend me some money?

Note that the past particle le is placed after the preposition gěi.

9 Verb huán
The verb huán, meaning 'to return' or 'to give . . . back' can only be followed by things or money which you have borrowed. It cannot be used to mean 'to return home', for example. If you want to say 'to return something to somebody' or 'to return somebody
something', use the phrase gei + somebody after the verb huán. For example:

Nǐ shénme shíhou huán gei wǒ qián?
Lit. You when return to me money?
When are you going to give me the money back?

When the preposition gei is used in a statement, the past indicator le is usually placed after gei instead of after the verb; when gei occurs in a yes/no question, le is placed immediately before the question word ma. For example:

Táhuán gei le wǒ yì bèn shū. She has returned one book to me.
Táhuán gei nǐ shū le ma? Has she returned any books to you?

The preposition gei is sometimes omitted in the spoken language. For example:

Wǒ wàng le huán tā qián.
I forgot to return the money to him.

10 Use of gōu

This is a very useful phrase, especially at the dinner table. Until you say Gōu le (That's enough) food will be offered to you again and again. The phrase tends to be repeated to show that it is the truth, not out of politeness. For example:

A: Gōu ma? A: Is it enough?
B: Gōu le, gōu le. B: Yes, it's enough.

Remember that although le has no significant meaning, it must be used together with gōu to mean 'Yes, it's enough'. However, when the negation word bù is used, le is usually omitted. For example:

A: Gōu ma? A: Is it enough?
B: Bù gōu. B: No, it's not.

11 Omission of yōu in méi wèntí

The verb yōu (to have) is usually omitted when it is negated by méi in phrases or sentences. For example

Méi yōu wèntí becomes Méi wèntí No problem.
Méi yōu guānxi becomes Méi guānxi It doesn't matter.
Wǒméi yōu kāfèi. becomes Wǒméi kāfèi. I don't have coffee.
Some adjectives you may need in making comparisons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>zhǎn</th>
<th>tall</th>
<th>dà</th>
<th>old (age only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhǐ</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>young (age only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 2**

The following questions do not have a single correct answer. Answer them in Chinese using your own opinions. Then translate the answers into English:

(a) Nǐ zui xǐhuān shénme yánse?
(b) Nǐ bǐjiǎo xǐhuān shénme fàn?
(c) Zhōngwén hé Fǎwén (French), nǎ ge nán?
(d) Fāguó fàn bǐ Yingguó fàn hào ma?

**Exercise 3**

Match the colour words in the left-hand column with the nouns in the right-hand column (one colour word may go with more than one noun):

(a) lán 1 píngguǒ  
(b) lǜ 2 xiāngjiāo  
(c) huáng 3 chá (tea)  
(d) hóng 4 tiān (sky)

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Could you lend me two apples?
(b) He doesn't like lending money to friends.
(c) When is she going to give me the money back?
(d) I forgot to bring my wallet.
(e) Thank you for bringing some Chinese tea.
(f) Did she take her jumper with her?
(g) Liu Hong looks younger than Paul.

---

**Dialogue 2 Zhēn hésuàn 真合算 It's a bargain 📦**

Jane and Yuan Yi work for a joint-venture company in Guangzhou and they have become very good friends. Yuan Yi speaks a little English. Jane has invited Yuan Yi to her place for a meal. When Jane arrives, she finds Yuan Yi waiting outside her flat.

**Jane:** Duìbùqǐ. Wǒ chí dào le.
**Yuán Yì:** Méi guānxi. Wǒ gāng lái.

**Jane:** Jīntiān xià bān zào. Wǒ qù guāng le guāng zìyóu shichāng.
**Yuán Yì:** Wǒ shénme hào dōngxì ma?
**Jane:** Wǒ hěn duō. Kěxīn wǒ méi dài zūgōu de qián. Wǒ mǎi le yī jiān ... Zhōngwén zhēnme shuō ‘jumper’?
**Yuán Yì:** ‘Máoyì’.

**Jane:** Dui. Wǒ mǎi le jiān máoyì.
**Yuán Yì:** Ràng wǒ kàn kàn. (aftershǐ has a look and felt it)
**Jane:** Zhě bù cuò. Shì chūn māo ma?
**Yuán Yì:** Bù shì. Hán bāifēngzhi bāshí de máo.
**Jane:** Wūshǐ duō kuài.
**Yuán Yì:** Zhème piányì! Zhēn hésuàn. Wǒ hěn xǐhuān zhè zhōng yánse. Hái yǒu ma?
**Jane:** Shēn hóng sè de mǎi guāng le. Zhě shì zuìhòu yī jiān. Bǐguó, hái yǒu hěnduō qǐtā hǎokàn de yánse.
**Yuán Yì:** Wǒ mǐntiān bù shǎng bān, chóu kòng qǐ kàn kàn.

**Jane:** 对不起，我迟到了。
**Yuan Yi:** 没关系，我刚来。
**Jane:** 今天下班了，我去逛了逛自由市场。
**Yuan Yi:** 有什么好东西吗?
**Jane:** 有很多，可惜我没带足够的钱。我买了一件...
中文这么说‘JUMPER’?
**Yuan Yi:** 毛衣。
**Jane:** 对，我买了件毛衣。
**Yuan Yi:** 让我看看。(...) 真不错。是纯毛的吗?
**Jane:** 不是。含百分之八十的毛。
**Yuan Yi:** 摸上去很舒服。多少钱?
**Jane:** 五六十块。
**Yuan Yi:** 这么便宜！真合算，我很喜欢这种颜色。还有吗?

---
Notes to Dialogue 2

12 Verbs lái and dào

The verb lái can mean both ‘to come’ or ‘to arrive’, whilst the verb dào can only mean ‘to arrive’. They are interchangeable when the meaning of ‘to arrive’ is intended. For example:

Wǒ gāng lái. I’ve just arrived.
Wǒ gāng dào. I’ve just arrived.

Note that when the word gāng (just) is used, le is not needed.

13 Adverbs chi and zào

Regarding the verb lái (to arrive/come), chi (late) and zào (early) are placed after it. For example:

Xiao Wáng lái chi le wǔ fènzhōng.
Xiao Wang arrived five minutes late.

Wǒ lái zào le.
I arrived earlier.

However, chi must be placed before dào in Wǒ chi dào le (lit. ‘I late arrived’). The expression Wǒ chi dào le is used more frequently than Wǒ lái chi le if the meaning of ‘I’m late’ is intended. An alternative to chi is wàn, which is often used after the verb.

14 Verb guǎng

The verb guǎng can be broadly translated as ‘look around’ (usually followed by shopping places). The phrase guǎng shāngdiàn has slightly different implications from mái dōngxi. When you guǎng shāngdiàn, there is nothing specific you want to buy, whereas the phrase mái dōngxi suggests that you know what you want to buy. For example:

Wǒ xiǎohuàn guǎng ziyóu shāngchǎng.
I like to look around free markets.

Tā bù xiǎohuàn guǎng shāngdiàn.
She doesn’t like to look around shops.
15 Ziyou shichang

In mainland China, *ziyou shichang*, meaning 'free market', are places where prices are not controlled by the government. Thus bargains are expected in those 'free markets'.

16 Repetition of some one-syllable verbs

When some one-syllable verbs are repeated, a touch of informality is added to the expression. For example:

**Wō qù kānkān.**
I'll go and have a look.

**Nǐ xiǎng guāngguāng ziyou shichāng ma?**
Would you like to have a look around the market?

Note that the repeated syllable (i.e. the second syllable) is toneless.

If the past indicator *le* is used when the verb is repeated, it is placed between the two verbs *not* after the second verb. For example:

**Wǒkàn le kàn nà bèn shū, méi yìsi.**
I had a read of that book. Not interesting.

**Wǒtīng le tīng tāde Zhōngwén, hái bù cuò.**
I had a listen to her Chinese. Not bad.

Note that because *le* is toneless, the repeated verb following it must keep its original tone.

17 Phrases shǎng bān and xià bān

The verb *shǎng* in *shǎng bān* is the same *shǎng* as in *shǎng xué* (to go to school) (see Note 11 of Lesson 5). The verb *xià* in *xià bān* can also be used to form the expression *xià xué* (to finish school). *Shǎng bān* means 'to go to work' and *xià bān* means 'to finish work':

**Míngtiān nǐ shǎng bān zǎo ma?**
Are you going to work early tomorrow?

**Nǐ jīntiān jī diàn xià bān?**
What time do you finish work today?

When adverbs *chǐ* (late) and *zǎo* (early) are used to modify the verbal phrases *shǎng bān* and *xià bān* (usually to describe the past action), (a) they are placed after *shǎng bān* and *xià bān*; and (b)

18 Use of shénme

*Shénme* can also be used in front of nouns in questions and negative sentences to mean 'any'. For example:

**Ziyou shichāng yǒu shénme hǎo dòngxi ma?**
Is there any good stuff in the market?

**Tā méi yǒu shénme péngyou.**
He doesn't have any friends.

19 More on the question word zhénme

We saw this word previously in *Zhénme yáng?, Zhénme mài?,* etc. Let us see how it is used in asking more complex questions. For example:

**Zhōngwén (nǐ) zhénme shuō 'TV'?**
How do you say 'TV' in Chinese?

**Nǐde míngzi (nǐ) zhénme xié?**
How do you write your name?

**Zhōngguórén zhénme guó xīn nián?**
How do Chinese people spend the New Year?

Note that the pronoun *nǐ* in the above first two sentences can be omitted.

20 Omission of yì before measure words

The number *yì* (one) is usually omitted before measure words that precede nouns. However, if the noun following the measure word is omitted, the number word *yì* must remain. For example:

**Wǒmén dà xué yǒu ge Fáguórén.**
Lit. Our university have [measure word] France person.
There is a French person at our university.
Xiao Wang mǎi le liǎng jiān máoyì. Wǒ mǎi le yī jiān.
Xiao Wang bought two jumpers and I bought one.

21 Use of bāifēnzhī

In English, the number comes before the expression *per cent*. In Chinese, the opposite is so: the number comes after *bāifēnzhī* (per cent). For example:

*bāifēnzhī shí*
10 per cent

*bāifēnzhī lǐng diān wǔ*
0.5 per cent ('point' is pronounced *diǎn*)

*bāifēnzhī bāi*
100 per cent (*bái* as in *yī bái*)

If phrases with *bāifēnzhī* occur before nouns, the word *de* should be used to link them:

Zhè jiān máoyì hán bāifēnzhī bāshí de máo.
This jumper contains 80 per cent wool.

22 Use of duō

The word *duō* is used after a number to mean 'more than' or 'over'. If there is a measure word in the sentence, *duō* must be placed before the measure word. For example:

Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshi sānshí duō suí.
My Chinese teacher is *over* thirty.

Tā yǒu ěrshí duō ge shǐshū hé ěr yì.
He has *more than* twenty uncles and aunts.

23 Use of hěn before the verb

When *hěn* is used before the adjective, it means 'very' (see Lesson 1). Here, it is used before the verb and it means 'very much'. Let us compare the following two sentences:

Tā hěn hǎokàn. She is very good-looking.

Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó fàn. I like Chinese food very much. verb

24 Verbal phrase chōu kōng

The verb *chōu* literally means 'to draw/pull'. When it is used together with *kōng* (lit. 'space/vacancy'), we have the phrase *chōu kōng* meaning 'to make time'. For example:

Wǒ yídīng chōu kōng qù kàn nǐ.
I'll definitely make time to go to see you.

Ni kěyǐ chōu kōng qù mǎi dōngxi ma?
Could you make time to go shopping?

Another expression which also means 'to make time' is *chōu shíjiān*. For example:

Ni chōu shíjiān gěi wǒ jiàngjiāng nǐde qǐngkuàng, hǎo ma?
Will you make some time to tell me about yourself?

25 Difference between gōu and zǔgōu de

The word *gōu* (followed by *le* in affirmative sentences) is used after nouns to mean 'there is enough . . . ' or 'be enough' whereas *zǔgōu de* is used before nouns to mean 'enough'. For example:

A: Qián gōu ma? A: Is there enough money?
B: Gōu le. B: It's enough.
Tā yǒu zǔgōu de qián. He has enough money.

Exercises

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks with *qù, shàng*, or *guāng*:

(a) Wǒ jǐntiān bù _______ bān.
(b) Nǐ xiǎng qù _______ zǐyóu shìchāng ma?
(c) Zhú Mǐn xià ge yuè _______ Zhōngguó.
(d) Nǐde érzi _______ xiǎoxué le ma?
Exercise 6

Based on what we have learnt so far, what do you say in the following situations:

(a) You are late for your appointment and you apologize.
(b) You want to assure your friend that there is absolutely no problem if he wants to borrow some money from you.
(c) You do not know how to say the phrase ‘good bargain’ in Chinese and you ask your Chinese teacher.
(d) You have just borrowed some money from your friend, and you want to assure her that you will definitely give it back to her tomorrow.

Exercise 7

Re-arrange the word order of the following so that each set of words becomes a meaningful sentence. Then translate the sentences into English:

(a) hán, zhè tiáo lǐngdài, wūshí, bǎifénzhī, sì, dé
(b) shǎngdiàn, wǒ, le, guǎng, guǎng
(c) gěi le wǒ, Táng Bīn, ěrshí kuài qián, jié
(d) dào, tā, jǐntiān záoshang, chī, ěrshí fēnzhōng, le

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with gou or zōugōu de:

(a) shí fēi kuài _______ ma?
(b) wǒ méi yǒu _______ shìjiān qù yóuyǐng.
(c) A: Bān jīn cǎoméi _______ ma?
   B: _______ le.
(d) Tāmén yǒu _______ qián qù Zhōngguó lǚyou.

Exercise 9

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1. She doesn’t have any good friends.
2. I’m not working tomorrow. I can find some time to go swimming.
3. I guess he is over fifty.
4. I’m sorry. The dark blue jumpers are sold out. Will black do?
5. It’s a real good bargain. Any more of these?

Exercise 10

Choose the right character to fill in the blanks and then translate the sentence into English:

(a) 我妈妈明____ 看我。
   i) 夫 ii) 大 iii) 天

(b) 他不想____ 买东西。
   i) 丢 ii) 去 iii) 共

Exercise 11

Convert the following sentence in pinyin into characters:

Wǒ xǐhuan xué Zhōngwén.

Reading/listening comprehension

Below are seven Chinese sentences. Underneath each sentence are three English sentences. Read or listen to (if you have the recording) the Chinese sentence first and tick one English sentence which is closest in meaning to the original Chinese sentence.

A  Duībùqǐ. Yídàn kāfèi màiguāng le. Hǎinán Dào kāfèi xíng ma?
(a) There is plenty of Italian coffee.
(b) Coffee from Hainan Island is available.
(c) Coffee is sold out.

B  Míngtiān, wǒ qǐ diān shàng bān.
(a) I am not working tomorrow.
(b) I finish work at seven tomorrow.
(c) I start work at seven tomorrow.

C  Xiǎo Fāng jiē gěi le David wǔshí kuài qián.
(a) David borrowed fifty yuan from Xiao Fang.
(b) David lent Xiao Fang fifty yuan.
(c) Xiao Fang has got fifty yuan with her.
9 Zài cānguǎn 在餐馆

At the restaurant

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- name a few Chinese dishes
- order some food and drinks in a restaurant
- use two more measure words
- use guò to describe a past experience
- use rúguó in conditional sentences
- position some adverbs correctly by using de
- write and recognize more characters

Dialogue 1
Diăn cài ma? 点菜吗? Ready to order?

D Zàogāo! Wǒ wàng le huán Línlin qián.
(a) I forgot to buy Linlin a present.
(b) I forgot to give Linlin her money back.
(c) I forgot how old Linlin is.

E Wǒ méimei bǐ wǒ hǎokàn.
(a) I think that my younger sister is good-looking.
(b) I think that I am better-looking than my younger sister.
(c) I think that my younger sister is better-looking than me.

F David bù zhīdào Zhōngwén zěnme shuō 'toilet'?
(a) David knows how to say ‘toilet’ in Chinese.
(b) David does not know how to say ‘toilet’ in Chinese.
(c) David wants to know how to say ‘toilet’ in Chinese.

G Chén Lǐlǐ chuān huáng sè biějiāo hǎo.
(a) Chen Lili looks nice in yellow.
(b) Chen Lili looks nice in blue.
(c) Chen Lili likes the colour yellow.
Li Youde had previously met Daniel and Janet whilst on a business trip in Australia. Now, Daniel and Janet are visiting Taiwan and Li Youde is their host. Today, he is taking them out for dinner. They have just entered a restaurant:

WAITER: Wànshàng hào. Jì wèi?
LI YÒUDÉ: Sàn wèi.
(Waiter follows the waiter to a table)
WAITER: Qìng gèn wǒ lái.
WAITER: Qìng zuò. Nímen xiǎn xiàn hē yìdiǎn shénme?
DANIEL: Wǒ yào yì píng Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.
LI YÒUDÉ: Wǒ yè yìyáng.
WAITER: Xiǎojie xiǎn xiàn hē shénme?
JANET: Yì běi chéngzi zhī.
WAITER: Hāo de. Qìng kān càidàn.
(The waiter hands out a menu to each of them. After leaving them enough time to decide what they want, the waiter returns)
WAITER: Dìdián cǎi ma?
LI YÒUDÉ: Dìdián. Wǒ xiàn diàn. Yì ge hǎixiàn tāng hē yī ge niúròu cháo miāntiāo.
WAITER: Nín ne, xiānshēng?
DANIEL: Yì ge suānlià dòufu tāng, yī ge jī dǐng cháo shícài, ěr liàng xiǎo lóng bāozi. Wǒ sǐ le.
WAITER: Xiǎojie?
JANET: Wǒ yào yī xiǎo pán zhá dàxiā, yī ge tángcù yù, hǎi yào yī ge bāi mǐfàn.
WAITER: Hāo de. Qìng shào dēng.
WAITER: 晚上好。几位?
LI YÒUDÉ: 三位。
WAITER: 请跟我来。
WAITER: 请坐。你们想先喝一点什么?
DANIEL: 我要一瓶青岛啤酒。
LI YÒUDÉ: 我也一样。
WAITER: 小姐想喝什么?
JANET: 一杯橙子汁。
WAITER: 好的。请看菜单。
WAITER: 点菜吗?
LI YÒUDÉ: 点。我先点。一个海鲜汤和一个牛肉炒面条。
WAITER: 您呢，先生?

DANIEL: 一个酸辣豆腐汤，一个鸡丁炒时菜，二两小龙虾。
WAITER: 好的。请稍等。

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Character(s)</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>位</td>
<td>[measure word, see Note 1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēn</td>
<td>跟</td>
<td>to follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>坐</td>
<td>to sit/to sit down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píng</td>
<td>瓶</td>
<td>[measure word]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píjiǔ</td>
<td>啤酒</td>
<td>beer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìyáng</td>
<td>一样</td>
<td>to be the same/same</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéngzi zhí</td>
<td>橙子汁</td>
<td>orange juice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài dàn</td>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>menu [lit. 'dish list']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì dián</td>
<td>点菜</td>
<td>to order [+ food]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎixiàn</td>
<td>海鲜</td>
<td>seafood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>táng</td>
<td>汤</td>
<td>soup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niúròu</td>
<td>牛肉</td>
<td>beef</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháo</td>
<td>炒</td>
<td>to stir-fry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miāntiáo</td>
<td>面条</td>
<td>noodles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nín</td>
<td>您</td>
<td>you [the polite form]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nín ne?</td>
<td>您呢?</td>
<td>What about you/?And you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suānlià</td>
<td>酸辣</td>
<td>hot and sour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòufu</td>
<td>豆腐</td>
<td>tofu [made of soya beans]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jī</td>
<td>鸡</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jī dǐng</td>
<td>鸡丁</td>
<td>diced chicken [lit. 'chicken dice']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shícài</td>
<td>时菜</td>
<td>seasonal vegetables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liàng</td>
<td>两</td>
<td>[unit of weight, see Note 7]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo lóng</td>
<td>小笼</td>
<td>small steam-container</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāozi</td>
<td>包子</td>
<td>steamed bread with fillings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>è sǐ le</td>
<td>饿死了</td>
<td>to be starving [lit. 'hungry died']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī xiǎo pán</td>
<td>一小盘</td>
<td>a small plate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhá</td>
<td>炸</td>
<td>to deep fry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxiā</td>
<td>大虾</td>
<td>king prawn [lit. 'big shrimp']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tángcù</td>
<td>糖醋</td>
<td>sweet and sour [lit. 'sugar vinegar']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yú</td>
<td>鱼</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāi mǐfàn</td>
<td>白米饭</td>
<td>boiled rice [lit. 'white rice food']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shāo dēng</td>
<td>稍等</td>
<td>just a second [lit. 'a while wait']</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Measure words wéi and píng

Wéi is only used in front of people. It is a polite form of the measure word gè. For example:

Zhōngwén Xì yǒu liàng wéi jiàoshòu.
There are two professors in the Chinese Department.

Waiter: Jí wéi?
Customer: Sì wéi.

Píng is used to indicate bottles and jars. For example:

Wǒ mǎi le sān píng pǐjū.
I bought three bottles of beer.

2 Use of gèn

In English, you say Follow me; in Chinese, you must say ‘Follow me walk’, ‘Follow me read’, ‘Follow me come’, etc. depending on the activity. For example:

Qǐng gèn wǒ lái.
Lit. Please follow me come.
Please follow me/This way, please.
Qǐng gèn tā dà.
Lit. Please follow him read.
Please follow him/Please read after him.

3 Wǒ yè yìyáng

This phrase can be used if you wish to show that you agree with someone else’s choice or opinion of a kind of drink, a film, etc. It can be broadly translated as ‘Same for me, please’, ‘I think the same’ or ‘Me too’, depending on the context. For example:

A: Wǒ yào yì běi chénzǐ zhì.
I’d like a glass of orange juice.

B: Wǒ yè yìyáng.
Same for me, please.

A: Wǒ hén xǐhuān Zhōngguó fán.
I like Chinese food very much.

B: Wǒ yè yìyáng.
Me too.

4 Phrase diàn cài

The phrase diàn cài, literally meaning ‘point dish’, can only be used in restaurant situations. For example:

Waiter: Xiānshēng, diàn cài ma? Ready to order, sir?
Customer: Diàn.

The verb diàn can be followed by dish names. For example:

A: Nǐ diàn le shénme cài?
What have you ordered?

B: Wǒ diàn le yì ge tángcù yú.
I’ve ordered sweet and sour fish.

Note that the word cài can be omitted from A’s utterance above.

5 Chinese dishes

Chinese dishes usually have imaginative names such as ‘Beef in Bird Nest’, ‘Aunts Climbing the Tree’, which may be named according to the presentation, shape or the way it is cooked. There are fixed expressions for dishes: for example, the Chinese word for ‘sweet’ is tián, but you must say tángcù (lit. ‘sugar vinegar’) for ‘sweet and sour’ and suānlà (lit. ‘sour chilli’) for ‘hot and sour’.

There is also a difference between ‘rice’ and ‘cooked rice’ in Chinese. The word for ‘rice’ is dānǐ, (lit. ‘large rice’). The word mǐfàn (lit. ‘rice food’) is ‘cooked rice’. Then we have bái mǐfàn (boiled or steamed rice), cháomǐfàn (fried rice), etc. You can also say bái fàn or cháo fàn with mǐ omitted.

Xiǎo lóng bāozi is a real treat. It is steamed bread with a variety of fillings inside (e.g. minced pork, minced beef, shrimps with vegetables, or simply mixed vegetables).

The word niúrōu (beef) literally means ‘cattle meat’. The word ròu can be added to some animal names: for example, if we add ròu to zhū (pig) and yáng (sheep), we have zhúròu (pork) and yángròu (lamb).

6 More dish names and vegetarian dishes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jǐaózǐ</th>
<th>Dumpling</th>
<th>Sūcān</th>
<th>Vegetarian meal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chūnjuān</td>
<td>Spring rolls</td>
<td>Cháo dōuyá</td>
<td>Stir-fried bean-sprouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dān cháo fàn</td>
<td>Egg fried rice</td>
<td>Sū jǐaózī</td>
<td>Vegetarian dumpling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húntun tàng</td>
<td>Won ton soup</td>
<td>Sū chūnjuān</td>
<td>Vegetarian spring rolls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7 Unit of weight liàng

In Lesson 7, the word jīn (half a kilo) was introduced. A smaller unit of measure is liàng: \(1 \text{jīn} = 10 \text{liàng}\).

8 Common drinks

Below are the names for some common drinks which you may wish to order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drink</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shuǐ</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuàngquán shuǐ</td>
<td>mineral water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chá</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bōluó zhī</td>
<td>pineapple juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yězi zhī</td>
<td>coconut juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēkǒu kēlè</td>
<td>Coca Cola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pútáo jiǔ</td>
<td>wine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(You can add hóng or bái in front of pútáo jiǔ to make it 'red wine' or 'white wine'.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drink</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mǐ jiǔ</td>
<td>rice wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái jiǔ</td>
<td>spirits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 Verb-adjectives + sǐ le

This is a very useful combination to remember. It can be used whenever you want to exaggerate things. Literally, sǐ le means 'to have died' or 'died'. For example:

Wǒ gāoxìng sǐ le.
Lit. I be happy died.
I'm so happy.

Wǒ è sǐ le.
Lit. I be hungry died.
I'm starving.

10 Verb dēng

The expression Qīng shào dēng (lit. 'Please a while wait') is a more formal way of saying 'Just a second'. When it is used in restaurant situations, it is almost equivalent to 'Thank you' in English. On more casual occasions, you can say Dēng yǐxià (lit. 'Wait a second') or Dēngdēng. (lit. 'Wait wait').

Exercises

Exercise 1

What do you say if you want to order the following?
(a) a glass of orange juice
(b) a bottle of beer
(c) two glasses of white wine
(d) some Chinese tea

Exercise 2

Look at the menu below and say what you would like to order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CÀIDÀN</th>
<th>JIÀGÉ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TĀNG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suānlà dòufu tāng</td>
<td>¥ 4.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hǎixiān tāng</td>
<td>¥ 6.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hùntún tāng</td>
<td>¥ 5.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZHÉNGCĀN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tāngcù zhúrōu</td>
<td>¥ 8.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ji dìng cháo shícài</td>
<td>¥ 10.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nièróu cháo qīngjiāo</td>
<td>¥ 11.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhá dàxiā</td>
<td>¥ 20.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hóng sháo yú</td>
<td>¥ 18.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yǔ tōu sháo dòufu</td>
<td>¥ 16.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cháo shícài</td>
<td>¥ 7.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jídàn cháo mǐfān</td>
<td>¥ 1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bái mǐfān</td>
<td>¥ 1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiǎo lóng bāozi</td>
<td>(1 liàng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jī sǐ cháo miántiāo</td>
<td>¥ 3.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
New words in the menu above:

jià gé  price
jiàn dàn  egg (lit. 'chicken egg')
zhēng cān  main course
yú tóu  fish head
qìng jiāo  green pepper
jī sī  shredded chicken

Exercise 3

Translate the following phrases and sentences into Chinese:

(a) Please sit down.
(b) I'd like to have a look at the menu.
(c) This way, please. (uttered by a waiter in a restaurant)
(d) I'm starving.
(e) Just a second.

Dialogue 2

Nǐ chī guō kǎo yā ma? 你吃过烤鸭吗? Have you ever had roast duck?  

Gāo Xiǎohuá lives in Taiwan. This is her first visit to mainland China since she left in the early 1940s. She is now visiting some of her school friends in Beijing and Liu Qīngqīng is one of them. They are discussing which restaurant to go to.

Qīngqīng: Nǐ chī guō Běijīng kǎo yā ma, Xiǎohuá?
Xiǎohuá: Méi yǒu.
Qīngqīng: Shì ma? Nà, nǐ yìdìng děi chángcháng. Nǐ jǐntiān wǎnshàng yǒu kòng ma?
Xiǎohuá: Yǒu kòng.
Qīngqīng: Nà, wǒ jīnwàn qǐng nǐ chī kǎo yā, zěnmé yàng?
Xiǎohuá: Tāi hǎo le. Zánmen qu nà jiā cānguān?
Qīngqīng: Běijīng Kǎo Yā Diàn, hǎo bù hǎo?
Xiǎohuá: Tāi hǎo le.

(later that evening, Xiǎohuá and Qīngqīng are enjoying their meal at the Beijing Roast Duck Restaurant)

Xiǎohuá: Nǐ tài dui le. Zhēn háochī.
Qīngqīng: Wǒ zhēn gāoxìng nǐ xiǎohuá kǎo yā. Duō chǐ yǐxié.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guō</td>
<td>to roast</td>
<td>guō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kǎo</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td>kǎo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yā</td>
<td>Is that so?</td>
<td>yā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì ma</td>
<td>in that case</td>
<td>shì ma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà</td>
<td>to have got/to must</td>
<td>nà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>děi</td>
<td>to taste</td>
<td>děi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháng</td>
<td>to invite</td>
<td>cháng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐntiān wānshàng</td>
<td>this evening/tonight</td>
<td>jǐntiān wānshàng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu kòng</td>
<td>to have time/to be free</td>
<td>yǒu kòng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīng</td>
<td>to invite</td>
<td>qīng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cānguān</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>cānguān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diàn</td>
<td>restaurant/snack-bar/shop</td>
<td>diàn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ tài dui le</td>
<td>You are so right.</td>
<td>nǐ tài dui le</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háochī</td>
<td>tasty [lit. 'good cat']</td>
<td>háochī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>duō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dū</td>
<td>to pass</td>
<td>dū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiāng</td>
<td>sauce</td>
<td>jiāng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Use of guo

Guo is inserted after some verbs to indicate that something happened in the definite past. The emphasis is on the past experience as opposed to when it happened. Expressions denoting past times (e.g. last year, yesterday) are usually not used together with guo. A verb plus guo is the equivalent of the English expressions to have been to... or to have done something. For example:

Ni qù guo Zhōngguó ma? Have you ever been to China?
Wǒ chī guo Yídáli fàn. I have had Italian food.

To negate verbs with guo following them, use méi yǒu or méi. For example:

Xiǎohuá méi yǒu chī guo Béijīng kǎo yā. Xiaohua hasn't had Beijing roast duck before.

12 Use of déi

Déi is a colloquial word meaning 'to have to' or 'must'. If you want to be very persistent, the adverb yídìng (definitely/must) can be placed before déi. For example:

Wǒ déi zǒu le. I've got to leave.
Ni yídìng déi lái wǒmen jiù chī fàn. You've got to come to ours for a meal.

The negation of déi is bú yòng or bú bi not bú déi. For example:

Ni bú yòng lái. You don't have to come.
Ni bú bi mài píjiù. You don't have to buy any beer.

13 Forming time expressions with jīntiān

In English, you say this morning, this afternoon and this evening; whilst in Chinese, you put jīntiān (today) in front of záoshāng, xiàwù and wánshāng. Thus we have:

jīntiān záoshāng this morning
jīntiān xiàwù this afternoon
jīntiān wánshāng this evening

Note that jīntiān záoshāng and jīntiān wánshāng can be shortened to jīnzāo and jínwān.

14 Use of yǒu kōng

The word kōng is the same kōng as in chōu kōng (to make time) which appeared in Lesson 8. Yǒu kōng means 'to have time' or 'to be free'. To negate yǒu kōng, put méi yǒu or méi in front of kōng. For example:

A: Nǐ míngtiān wánshāng yǒu kōng ma? Will you be free tomorrow evening?
B: Kōngpà méi kōng. I'm afraid not.

15 Verb qíng

We learnt this word back in Lesson 1, where it meant 'please'. When qíng is used as a verb, it means 'to invite' or 'to treat someone to something'. If you want to say 'to invite someone to dinner', you must say 'to invite someone eat dinner'. For example:

Wǒ xiāng qíng nǐ chī wánfàn. I'd like to invite you to dinner.

If it is a past event, put the past indicator le after chī not qíng. For example:

Zuòwān Lǎo Lì qíng wǒ chī le kǎo yā. Lao Lì treated me to some roast duck last night.

16 Duō chī yǐxiē

This expression is usually used in situations where a host/hostess insists that a guest has some more to eat or a parent asks the child
to eat more. Duò chì yìxiě literally means ‘more eat some’. Here the word duò is an adverb which describes the verb chì. It is put before the verb in sentences which make suggestions or give orders. For example:

Qíng duò mài yìxiě shuìguō. Please buy some more fruit.
Duò chì yìxiě dāxiā. Have some more prawns.
Duò hé yìxiě pǐjiū. Have some more beer.

17 Verb dì

This verb is usually used together with the preposition gēi to mean ‘to pass something to somebody’. For example:

Nǐ kěyǐ dì gēi wǒ táng ma? Could you pass me the sugar?
Qíng dì gēi wǒ bīng. Please pass me the pancakes.

18 Wǒ gòu le

Grammatically, this is not a correct sentence because it means ‘I’m enough’. However, this has become an accepted expression to mean ‘I’ve got enough’ or ‘It’s enough for me’.

19 Chì bāo le

This is another very popular phrase at the dinner table. If you are already full and do not wish to have any more food put into your bowl, you can say one of these:

Wǒ chì bāo le.
Chì bāo le. I’m full. I’ve had enough to eat.
Wǒ bāo le.

20 Conditional word rúguó ... dehuà

The word rúguó, meaning ‘if’, is used either at the very beginning of a sentence or after the subject so that it makes the sentence conditional. For example:

Rúguó nǐ bù rènshì Xióo Wáng, wǒ gēi nǐ jiēshào.
If you don’t know Xiao Wang, I’ll introduce you to her.
Nǐ rúguó méi yǒu qián, wǒ kěyǐ jìe gēi nǐ yìxiě.
If you don’t have any money, I can lend you some.

Rúguó is often used together with dehuà (it has no specific meaning and the first syllable carries no tones) in the first half of a conditional sentence. For example:

Rúguó nǐ méi kòng dehuà, wǒ zìjǐ qù mǎi dōngxi.
If you don’t have the time, I’ll go shopping myself.

Sometimes, the emphatic word jiǔ is used in the second half of the sentence. For example:

Rúguó nǐ xiǎng dehuà, jiǔ zāi yào yìxiě.
If you want, order some more.

21 Use of de to link verbs or verb-adjectives with their adverbs

The particle de, which is a different de from the de in wǒde (my/mine), for example, is used to link verbs or verb-adjectives with adverbs if you wish to describe the degree of something. Adverbs such as kuài (fast), duò (more), zhāo (early), chì (late), hǎo (well), etc. are usually used for this purpose. Thus, the pattern is:

verb/verb-adjective + de + adverb

For example:

(a) Lào Zhāng chì de hěn duò.
verb adverb
Lào Zhang eats a lot.

(b) Wǒ chì de bǐ nǐ kuài.
verb adverb
Lit. I eat compared with you fast.
I eat faster than you do.

With verb-adjectives, it does not matter whether the adverb is placed before the verb-adjective or after it. For example:

Běijīng de dōngtiān lěng de hěn.
verb-adj. adverb
Beijing’s winter is very cold.

Běijīng de dōngtiān hěn lěng.
adverb verb-adj.
Beijing’s winter is very cold.
With verbs, the position of kuài depends on whether it is an order or describes one’s manner. For example:

Qìng kuài chí.  Please eat quickly.
Tā chi de kuài.  He eats fast.

To negate sentences (a) and (b) above, place bù after de. For example:

Lǎo Zhāng chí de bù hěn duō.  Lao Zhang doesn’t eat much.
Wǒ chí de bù bǐ nǐ kuài.  I’m not eating faster than you are.

To negate verb-adjectives plus de, use the normal negation order, i.e. put bù before the verb-adjective and omit both de and the adverb. Alternatively, move the adverb before the verb-adjective and put bù before the adverb. For example:

Bēijīng de dòngtiān bù lěng.  Beijing’s winter isn’t cold.
Bēijīng de dòngtiān bù hěn lěng.  Beijing’s winter isn’t very cold.

Another thing to remember is that when this structure is used to describe a past event, do not use le nor guo with de. In most situations, the context makes it clear if it was a past event. For example:

Jīntiān zǎoshāng, tā lái de hěn zāo.  She arrived very early this morning.

Exercises

Exercise 4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using either guo or le:

(a) Has Alan ever been to China?
(b) Linda went to London yesterday.
(c) He has not had Chinese food before.
(d) A: Have you had your breakfast?
   B: Not yet.

Exercise 5

What do you say in the following situations:

(a) You want to let your host know that you have had enough to eat.
(b) You would like to have some more pancakes.
(c) You want one of the people at the table to pass you the sauce.
(d) You stop the waiter and ask for another bottle of beer.
(e) At the dinner table, you want to invite your guests to have some more food.

Exercise 6

Complete the following sentences with the phrases provided in the brackets:

(a) _______ (If you have time), zànmén qú chǐ kǎo yā, hǎo ma?
(b) _______ (you’ve got to) lái kàn wǒmen.
(c) _______ (This morning) wǒ shàng bān chí dào le ěrshí fènzhōng.
(d) Rǔguó nǐ è dehuà, _______ (let’s have lunch first), hǎo bù hǎo?
(e) Xiǎo Zhāng bù xiǎng _______ (invite Lǎo Wáng).

Exercise 7

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using de to link verbs or verb-adjectives with adverbs where appropriate:

(a) The swimming pool opened very early this morning.
(b) Please come early.
(c) I came in very late this morning.
(d) John speaks very quickly.

Exercise 8

Negate the following sentences:

(a) Nǐ shuō de duì.
(b) Wǒ méimeī lái de hěn zāo.
(c) Yīngguó de xiàtiān rè de hěn.
(d) Tāde fǔmǔ tuíxiū de hěn zāo.
(e) Xiǎohuá gāoxìng de hěn.
Characters

1 Learning to write méi yǒu kòng (do not have time)

The left part of méi is called the 'water radical', and it is a very commonly used radical. The character kòng consists of a top part and bottom part. The top part is called the 'roof radical', and it is frequently used.

2 Learning to write the verbs chī (to eat) and hé (to drink)

Both chī and hé share the same 'mouth radical' which we learnt earlier in Lesson 8. This is another frequently used radical. Most words that have something to do with the mouth have the 'mouth radical'.

3 Recognizing two signs:

Can in cānguǎn (restaurant) is the same cān as appears in cāntīng (dining-room/restaurant) which we learnt in Lesson 4. Cān is a very formal word for 'meal'.

Exercise 9

Convert the following sentences in pinyin into characters:
(a) Wǒ māmā shì Zhōngguórén. My mother is Chinese.
(b) Tā méi yǒu kòng. She doesn't have time.
(c) A: Nǐ qù mǎi dōngxi ma? Are you going to go shopping?
   B: Shì de. Yes.

Reading comprehension

There is a menu on page 176. First read it and then read the dialogue between the waitress, who speaks a little English, and Charles. Answer the questions in Chinese afterwards:

Dialogue

Charles: Xièxiè. Wǒ xiān yào yī bēi kāfēi, xīng ma?
Waitress: Dāngrán xīng.
(waiting the waitress leaves, Charles looks at the menu)
Waitress: Zhè shì nǐde kāfēi. Hái yào biéde ma?
Charles: Shì de. Xiánròu. (pointing at xián yā dàn) Zhè shì shénme?
Charles: Bù yào, bù yào. Wǒ yào jiān jī dàn.
Waitress: Hǎo de. Yào mógu hé xǐhóngshi ma?
Charles: Yào yídiān mógu.
Waitress: Qīng shǎo děng.

Vocabulary

yòng to have [polite expression]
zǎocān formal word for ‘breakfast’
xiān fàn porridge
dōushā red-bean paste
jiān fried/to fry
xián yā dàn salted duck-egg
niúnǎi milk
kāo miànbāo toast [lit. ‘baked bread’]

Questions
A Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ‘milk’?
B Charles chī guō xián yā dàn ma?
C Charles hè le niúnǎi háishì kāfēi?
D Tā hǎi chī le shénme?
10 Wèn lù 问路
Asking for directions

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- ask how to get to certain destinations
- understand some expressions regarding directions
- distinguish between kàn, kàn jiàn and kàn de jiàn
- distinguish between the use of kàn bù jiàn and méi yóu kàn jiàn
- say ordinal numbers (e.g. first, second, etc.)
- write and recognize more characters

Dialog 1
Cèsuō zài nàr? 厕所在哪儿? Where's the toilet? 📚

Imagine that you are in a place where Chinese is spoken and you do not know your way around very well. Below are three situations you may find yourself in:

(a) Inside a hotel
You: Qǐng wèn, cèsuō zài nàr?
Chinese speaker: Zài cāntīng de zuò biān.

(b) In the street
You: Qǐng wèn, fūjīn yǒu gōngyòng diànhuà mà?
Chinese speaker: Kǒngpà méi yǒu. Nǐ kàn de jiàn qiánmian hónglù dēng mà?
You: Kàn de jiàn.


(c) In the street
You: Nǐ néng gāosu wǒ zuò jī lù chē qù huǒchē zhàn mà?
Chinese speaker: Bù yòng zuò chē. Zǒulù shì fēnzhōng jiù dào le.
You: Zěnmé zǒu?
Chinese speaker: Dǐ yī ge lùkǒu wǎng dōng guǎi.

(a) Inside a hotel
You: 请问，厕所在哪儿？
Chinese speaker: 在餐厅的左边。

(b) In the street
You: 请问，附近有公用电话吗？
Chinese speaker: 恐怕没有，你看得见前面红绿灯吗？
You: 看得见。
Chinese speaker: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

(c) In the street
You: 你能告诉我坐几路车去火车站吗？
Chinese speaker: 不用坐车。走路十分钟就到了。
You: 怎么走？
Chinese speaker: 第一个路口往东拐。
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cèsuō</td>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>左</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biān</td>
<td>边</td>
<td>side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūjìn</td>
<td>附近</td>
<td>near by/close by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyòng</td>
<td>公用</td>
<td>public [lit. 'public use']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diànhuà</td>
<td>电话</td>
<td>telephone [lit. 'electric talk']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàn jiàn</td>
<td>看见</td>
<td>to see/to have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàn de jiàn</td>
<td>看得见</td>
<td>to be able to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quánmiàn</td>
<td>前面</td>
<td>ahead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hónglù dèng</td>
<td>红绿灯</td>
<td>traffic light [lit. 'red green light']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǒu</td>
<td>走</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>到</td>
<td>until/up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàng yòu guǎi</td>
<td>往右拐</td>
<td>to turn right [lit. 'towards right turn']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jíde</td>
<td>记得</td>
<td>to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nàr</td>
<td>那儿</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nèng</td>
<td>能</td>
<td>can/could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>坐</td>
<td>to take/to catch [lit. 'to sit']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lù</td>
<td>路</td>
<td>route/road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chē</td>
<td>车</td>
<td>car/bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huǒché zhàn</td>
<td>火车站</td>
<td>railway station [lit. 'fire car stop']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù yòng</td>
<td>不用</td>
<td>no need/do not need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǒulú</td>
<td>走路</td>
<td>to walk [lit. 'walk road']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jū le</td>
<td>就...了</td>
<td>[see Note 12]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zéméi zǒu?</td>
<td>怎么走?</td>
<td>How do I get there?/How do I get to...? [lit. 'How to walk?']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diànyí</td>
<td>第一</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lìkǒu</td>
<td>路口</td>
<td>crossroads/junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōng</td>
<td>东</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Zuò and you

Do you remember the term zuòyóu we learnt in Lesson 2, which means 'approximately'? On its own, zuò means 'left' and yóu right. If you want to say 'A is on the left/right', you must use the word biān and say A zài zuò/yóu biān. For example:

Nán cèsuō zài zuò biān. Nǚ cèsuō zài yóu biān.
The men's toilet is on the left and the women's is on the right.

If you want to say 'A is on B's left/right' or 'A is to the left/right of B', you must say A zài B de zuò/yóu biān. For example:

Yóujú zài cǎntíng de yóu biān.
The post-office is to the right of the dining-room.
(Looking at a photograph)
Wǒmèimei zài wǒde zuò biān. My sister is on my left.

2 Other direction words

Whilst zuò and yóu in Note 1 above can be used to describe both human beings and objects, dōng, nán, xī, běi (east, south, west, north) can only be used to describe objects. The usage is the same as zuò/yóu. For example:

Báihuò shāngdiàn zài Běijīng Fándiàn de dōng biān.
The department store is to the east of the Beijing Hotel.

The combinations of these direction words are different in order from English. See below:

dōngběi northeast dōngnán southeast
xīběi    northwest xīnán southwest

3 More on you

We learnt yóu (to have) in Lesson 4 in saying, for example, Běijīng Fándiàn yóu yī ge yóuyōng chí. Yóu can also be used without a
noun preceding it to mean ‘There is/are . . . ’. The adverb fujin (near by) is often used in front of you in this case. For example:

Fujin you yi jia hen da de yinhang.
Lit. Nearby have one very large bank.
There is a very large bank near by.

Fujin you cesuo ma? Is there a toilet nearby?

4 Use of kàn de jiàn

When the word jiàn is put after the verbs kàn (to see) or tīng (to listen), it indicates the effect of those verbs. With de inserted between kàn or tīng and jiàn, i.e. kàn de jiàn or tīng de jiàn, the emphasis is on whether one is able, for example, to see or hear. For example:

A: Ni kàn de jiàn ma? A: Can you see?
B: Kàn de jiàn. B: Yes, I can.
To negate, replace de with bù. For example:

Wo kàn bù jiàn hónghù dēng. I can't see the traffic lights.
(On the phone)
Wo tīng bù jiàn nǐ shuo shénme. I can't hear what you are saying.

If you want to say ‘to have seen/heard’, there is no need to use de; simply say kàn jiàn le or tīng jiàn le, which again is different from kàn le and tīng le because the latter means ‘looked at’ or ‘listened’ respectively. For example:

Wo kàn jiàn le césuō. I've seen the toilet./I saw the toilet.
Wo kàn le césuō. I looked at the toilet.

Note that to negate the above, place méi or méi you in front of the verb. Let us compare the two negations:

Wo méi you kàn jiàn césuō. I didn't see the toilet.
Wo kàn bù jiàn césuō. I can't see the toilet.

5 Use of wāng . . . guāi

The Chinese equivalent of ‘to turn left’ is wāng zuó guāi. Simply put the direction words (see Notes 1 and 2 above) between wāng and guāi. For example:

Zōu dào hónghù dēng, wāng dòng guāi.
Walk as far as the traffic lights, then turn east.

6 Use of jíde

The verb jíde is used to indicate things that you now remember or have remembered. For example:

Ni jíde tà tàitai de míngzi ma? Do you remember his wife's name?
Wǒ jíde nǐ. I remember you.
To negate, use bù in front of the verb. For example:

Wǒ bù jíde tà duǒ dá le. I don't remember how old he is.

Note that the verb jíde cannot be used to express a notion of future time. For example, it cannot be used to say ‘Please remember something’ or ‘I will remember something’.

7 Position of nà and zhèr

Do you remember the two pronouns nà (that) and zhè (this)? Once ér is added to them, we have nàr (there) and zhèr (here), which are always placed either before the verb or after zài (to be at/to be in). For example:

Nàr nǐ yì ge gōngyòng diànhuà.
There's a public telephone there.
(Looking at a map)
Wǒde dàxué zài zhèr.
My university is here.

8 Difference between huí and néng

In Lesson 2 we learnt the auxiliary verb huí which means ‘can’ or ‘to be able-to’. Huí emphasizes ability whereas néng emphasizes willingness. For example:

Wǒ gēge bù huí yǒuyǒng.
My elder brother cannot swim.

Ni néng jiè gěi wǒ yíxié qián ma?
Could you lend me some money?
9 Shortening of gōnggōng qìchē to chē

Anything that has got wheels is a chē. Thus we have:

- zìxìngchē: bicycle (zìxìng means 'self-pedalling')
- xiàochē: car (xiàó means 'small')
- huǒchē: train (huǒ means 'fire')
- chūzhūchē: taxi (chūzhū means 'on rent')
- mǎchē: horse-drawn carriage (mǎ means 'horse')

However, gōnggōng qìchē (gōnggōng means 'public together' and qìchē means 'vehicle') is often shortened to chē in mainland China. For example:

Ni kěyǐ zuò shí luò chē qù Tiān’ānnén.
You can take Bus No. 10 to go to Tian’anmen.

10 More on the question word jī

This question word has appeared earlier in various questions that have to do with numbers. Jī is also used to ask which number bus to take. For example:

Qínɡ wén, zuò jī luò chē qù huǒchē zhàn?
Could you tell me please which number bus to catch to get to the railway station?

Zhè shì jī luò chē? Which number bus is this?

11 Use of bù yòng

In Note 12 of Lesson 9, it was mentioned that the negative form of déi (to have to) is bù yòng. Basically, bù yòng means 'there is no need to' or 'do not need'. For example:

Ni bù yòng gěi wǒ mái liwú.
You don’t need to buy me any presents.

Bù yòng xiè. Zánmen shì hǎo péngyou.
Lit. No need to thank. We are good friends.
Don’t mention it. We’re good friends.

12 Construction jīu . . . le

One usage of this construction is to emphasize the verb or verb-adjective which is inserted between jīu and le. It is very difficult to find a direct English equivalent of this construction. Let us look at some examples:

Zǒulù shì fēnzhōng jiū dào le.
Lit. Walk ten minutes get there.
It’s only ten minutes’ walk, and you’ll be there.

Shì kùi qián jiù gōu le.
Ten yuan will be enough.

13 Zènme zōu?

This is a very common way of asking how to get to somewhere, although literally the phrase means ‘How to walk?’ You can put your desired destination in front of zènme zōu. For example:

Huǒchē zhàn zènme zōu?
How do I get to the railway station?

You can also place the verb qù (to go) before the destination. For example:

Qù nǐmén de dàxué zènme zōu?
How do I get to your university?

14 Ordinal numbers (e.g. first, second, etc.)

It is very easy to form ordinal numbers in Chinese. Simply put di in front of a numeral (e.g. yī, èr, sān, etc.). For example:

- di yī: first
- di èr: second
- di shíyī: eleventh
- di ěrshīsān: twenty-third

If you want to say, for example, ‘the first junction’, the measure word gé needs to be inserted between the ordinal number and the noun. Thus we have di yī gé lúkǒu.

Exercises

Exercise 1

You want to find out the following from a Chinese speaker:

(a) Where the toilet is.
(b) If there is a public telephone nearby.
(c) Where the No. 10 bus is.
(d) How to get to the railway station.
(c) Which number bus to catch to go to the Beijing Hotel.

Exercise 2

Look at the picture below and then complete the sentences describing the position of each person in relation to someone else in the picture:

1 Lao Zhang
2 Maria
3 Xiao Fang
4 Linda

(a) Lào Zhàng
(b) Maria
(c) Linda

Exercise 3

Look at the following two pictures and answer the questions (see page 193 for new signs):

I A plan of a corner of the ground floor of a hotel (facing page)
(a) Cēsuō zài nàr?
(b) Gōngyōng diànhuà zài nàr?
(c) Cāntīng zài nàr?
Suppose the following two destinations are both within walking distance:
(a) Huòchē zhan zěnme zōu?
(b) Qu Bèijīng Fándiàn zěnme zōu?

**Exercise 4**

Negate the following sentences and then translate the negated sentences into English:
(a) Tā jiè de wǒ de mǐngzi.
(b) Nǐ děi gěi wǒ māi lǐwù.
(c) Fūjīn yǒu bāihuò shàngdiàn.
(d) Wǒ kàn jiàn le huòchē zhan.
(e) Wǒ kàn de jiān hónglǚ dēng.

**Exercise 5**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
1 There is a post-office there.
2 She can speak Chinese.
3 I can't tell you about him.
4 Turn right at the first junction. You'll get there in about 15 minutes.

**Dialogue 2**

**Jiè zixíngchē  借自行车  Borrowing a bike**

This dialogue is between Frank, who is teaching English at the Guangzhou Foreign Language Institute, and his friend Feixia.

**Frank:** Wǒ kěyì jiè yīxià nǐde zixíngchē ma?
**Feixiá:** Dāngrán kěyì. Nǐ yào qu nǎr?
**Frank:** Yěxǔ xīngqū tiān qù Zhōngshān Dàxué.
**Feixiá:** Nǐ zhídào zěnme zōu ma?
**Frank:** Bù zhídào. Dānshì, wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng zhào dào.
**Feixiá:** Wǒ bù xiǎngxìn. Nǐ zhídào xiān chā yíxià dìtú.

**Notes to Dialogue 2**

**15 Use of jiè**

In Chinese, the word for 'to borrow' is the same as the word for 'to lend', which we learnt earlier in Lesson 8. The only difference lies in its usage. Let us compare jiè (to borrow) with jiè (to lend):

Wǒ xiǎng jiè yīxià nǐde zixíngchē.
I'd like to borrow your bike.
Wǒ jiè gěi le Xiao Li wǒde zìxíngchē.
I lent my bike to Xiao Li.

Note that yixià here does not have any specific meaning except reducing the abruptness of the tone. Yixià usually follows jiè when it means 'to borrow'; and gěi always follows jiè when it means 'to lend'. For example:

Wǒ kěyì jiè yixià nǐ de dìtú mà?
Could I borrow your map for a while?

Nǐ kěyì jiè gěi wǒ nǐ de dìtú mà?
Could you lend me your map?

16 Use of yǎo

In addition to the meaning of 'to want' which we learnt in Lesson 7, yǎo can also be used in front of verbs to indicate that something, often a planned action, is happening in the near future. For example:

Susan yǎo qù Zhōngguó lǚyóu.
Susan is going to China to travel.

Wǒ fùmǔ liùyuè yǎo lái Yingguó.
My parents are coming to England in June.

17 Zhōngshān Dàxué

Zhongshan University (Zhōngshān Dàxué) was named after Sun Yat-sen, the founder of the first Chinese republic, whose given name was Zhōngshān (literally meaning 'middle mountain'). Yatsen was his other given name.

18 Verb phrase zhāo dào

When the phrase zhāo dào is preceded by néng or kěyì, it means 'to be able to find'. If you cannot find something, put bù between zhāo and dào. For example:

A: Ní néng zhāo dào huǒchē zhàn mà?
   Can you find the railway station?
B: Zhāo bù dào.
   I can't.

When zhāo dào is followed by le, it means 'to have found' or 'found', and if you have not or did not find something, put the negation word méi(yòu) in front of zhāo dào. For example:

A: Ní zhāo dào nǐde qiánbāo le mà?
   Have you found your wallet?
B: Méi yǒu zhāo dào.
   No, I haven't found it.

19 Verb xiāngxin

If you want to say 'I don't believe it', you can either say Wǒ bù xiāngxin or Wǒ bù xìn. In spoken Chinese, xiāng is often omitted from xiāngxin. For example:

A: Wǒ jīnnián sānshíwǔ suì.    A: I'm thirty-five this year.
B: Wǒ bù xīn.              B: I don't believe it.

20 Use of qī

When qī is followed by zìxíngchē, it means 'to ride a bike', 'by bike' or 'go cycling'. For example:

Nǐ huì qī zìxíngchē mà?
Can you ride a bike?

Zuótiān, wǒ qī zìxíngchē qù Tiān’ānmén.
I went to Tian'anmen by bike yesterday.

Nǐ xǐhuàn qī zìxíngchē mà?
Do you like cycling?

21 Use of xūyào

The verb xūyào means 'to require' or 'to need'. It can also be translated as 'It takes ...' in certain contexts. For example:

Ta xūyào yì jiàn máoyì.
He needs a jumper.

Qí zìxíngchē qù Zhōngshān Dàxué xūyào èrshí fēnzhōng.
It takes twenty minutes to get to Zhongshan University by bike.
22 Xiaoshi as opposed to diǎn

Xiǎoshi (hour) is used for the duration of time and diǎn is used to tell the time. For example:

A: Cànǎng jī diǎn kǎimén?
    What time does the restaurant open?
B: Hǎi yǒu yī ge xiǎoshi.
    Still an hour to go.

Let us compare the use of bān (half) in combination with diǎn and xiǎoshi:

- yì diǎn bān half past one
- yì ge bān xiǎoshi one hour and a half
- bān ge xiǎoshi half an hour

Exercises

Exercise 6

What do you say if you want to know how long it takes to:

(a) cycle to Zhongshan University
(b) walk to the railway station
(c) get to Tian'anmen Square by bus?

Exercise 7

What does the verb jiē mean in the following sentences? Write 'borrow' or 'lend':

(a) Wǒ xiǎo jiē yǐxià nǐde zìxíngchē.
(b) Nǐ kěyí jiē gěi wǒ yīxiē qián ma?
(c) Wǒ bù xiǎo jiē gěi wǒ fūmǔ de qián.
(d) Xiǎo Fāng jiē gěi le Lǎo Wáng wǔshí kuài qián.

Exercise 8

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) I don't believe that you don't have a bike.
(b) I'm going to Shanghai next Saturday.
(c) Frank didn't find Zhongshan University.
(d) You'd better check the map.
(e) It takes more than an hour to cycle to my university.
(f) This is a good idea.

Characters

Recognizing three signs

- 厕所 toilet
- 公用电话 public telephone
- 火车站 railway station

Exercise 9

Match the following signs on the left with the English equivalent on the right:

1 餐馆 (a) hotel
2 旅游局 (b) tourist bureau
3 邮局 (c) bank
4 银行 (d) post-office
5 饭店 (e) shop
6 商店 (f) restaurant

Reading/listening comprehension (multiple choice)

1 Below are five Chinese sentences. Underneath each sentence are three English sentences. Read or listen to (if you have the
recording) the Chinese sentence first and tick the English sentence which is closest in meaning to the original Chinese sentence:

A Gongyòng diànhuà zài shì lù gōnggòng qìché zhàn de zuò biān.
(a) There is no public telephone nearby.
(b) The number 10 bus stop is on the left of the public telephone.
(c) The public telephone is on the left of the number 10 bus stop.

B Nǐ zuihǎo zuò ěrshí lù chē qù huǒché zhàn.
(a) You should walk to the bus station.
(b) You'd better go to the station by bus.
(c) You'd better go to the station by bike.

C Qí zìxíngché dào Běijīng Fàndiàn xùyào yī ge bān xiǎoshí zuòyòu.
(a) It takes about an hour and a half to get to the Beijing Hotel by bike.
(b) It takes half an hour to get to the Beijing Hotel by bus.
(c) It takes an hour to get to the Beijing Hotel by bike.

D Wǒ méi zhǎo dào wǒde qiánbāo.
(a) I found my wallet.
(b) I failed to find my wallet.
(c) I can't find my wallet.

E Tā bù jìde qù Zhōngshān Dàxué zěnmé zǒu.
(a) She cannot remember Zhongshan University.
(b) She remembers Zhongshan University.
(c) She cannot remember how to get to Zhongshan University.

2 Read the following phrases and add the correct tone marks. If you have the recording, listen first, and then add the correct tone marks:

(a) Qing zuò. Sit down, please. (b) Ē sī le. Starving.
(c) you kōng to be free (d) chī de kuài to eat quickly
(e) nàr there (f) Wo bu xīn. I don't believe it.

11 Mǎi qìché piào hé huǒché piào
买汽车票和火车票
Buying bus and train tickets

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
• buy bus and train tickets
• say which train you wish to take
• use more sophisticated phrases to modify nouns by using de
• make more sophisticated comparisons
• write and recognize more characters

Dialogue 1
Yǒu rén mǎi piào ma? 有人买票吗?
Fares, please! ☞

Andrew, a sales manager for a publishing company, is travelling in China. Today, he wants to try to find his way around without a tourist guide. At the moment he is on a bus

BUS CONDUCTOR: Yǒu rén mǎi piào ma?
ANDREW: Yǒu. Wǒ méi yì zhǎng qù dōngwùyuán de piào.
BUS CONDUCTOR: Zhè liǎng chē bù qù dōngwùyuán.
ANDREW: Shénme? Wǒ zuò cóu chē le ma?
ANDREW: Duìbùqǐ, wǒ méi tíng qǐng. Qǐng mǎn yídàn shuō.
BUS CONDUCTOR: (repeats slowly) Nǐ xià yì zhàn xià chē, huàn shìbā lù diānchē.
ANDREW: Xièxiè. Nà, wǒ mǎi yì zhǎng piào. Duōshǎo qián?
BUS CONDUCTOR: Yī máo.

Andrew: Tài xièxiè nǐ le.

Bus conductor: 有人买票吗?

Andrew: 有，我买一张去动物园的票。

Bus conductor: 这辆车不去动物园。

Andrew: 什么？我坐错车了吗？

Bus conductor: 对不起，你下一站下车，换十八路电车。

Andrew: 谢谢。那，我买一张票，多少钱？

Bus conductor: 一毛。

Passenger: 我刚好也去换十八路。你跟我走吧。

Andrew: 太谢谢你了。

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 On a Chinese bus

Buses in mainland China always have a conductor who sells tickets and ensures that everyone has one. The bus driver’s job is only to drive.

2 Use of 有 人

When 有 人 is used in a yes/no question, it means ‘Is there anybody who . . . ?’ or simply ‘Anybody . . . ?’ For example:

有 人 xiàng hē kāféi ma?
Is there anybody who’d like to have coffee?

Zhèr, 有 人 jiào Liu Xiá ma?
Anybody called Liu Xia here?

When 有 人 is used in affirmative sentences, it means ‘someone/somebody’. For example:

有 人 gěi nǐ mài le yǐ tiáo língdài.
Someone has bought you a tie.

3 Measure words 张 and 量

The measure word 张 is used before nouns such as 票 (ticket), 报纸 (newspaper), 紙 (sheets), etc. whenever required. For example:

量 张 gōnggōng qìché piào  two bus tickets

The measure word 量 is used before nouns such as gōnggōng qìché (bus), huǒchē (train), fēijí (plane), zìxíngché (bike), etc. For example:

三 量 火车  three trains

yi 量 zìxíngché one bike
4 Using de to link a verbal phrase with a noun

In English, prepositions such as 'in', 'to', etc. are used to specify nouns (e.g. a woman in a red jumper; a ticket to London). Also, in English, these modifying phrases or clauses come after the noun. This situation is very different in Chinese. Verbal phrases, not prepositions, are used to specify or modify nouns and they come before nouns. They are linked by de. For example:

Wǒ mǎi yí zhāng qù dōngwǔyuán de piāo.
Lit. I buy one go to zoo ticket.
A ticket to the zoo, please.

Nà ge chuān hóng máoyí de rén shì wǒ jiéjie.
Lit. That wear red jumper person is my elder sister.
The one in the red jumper is my elder sister.

5 Use of cuò

When cuò is used to mean 'to be wrong', it must be followed by le. For example:

Duìbùqǐ, wǒ cuò le.
Sorry, I'm wrong.

Cuò can also be used as an adverb to modify verbs. For instance, in English the sentence I got it wrong can be used to refer to things one has said, seen, heard, etc. However, in Chinese, you must say Wǒ shuō cuò le (lit. 'I spoke wrong'), Wǒ kàn cuò le (lit. 'I saw wrong'), Wǒ tīng cuò le (lit. 'I heard wrong'), etc. depending on the context. For example:

(A to C): Wǒmen xíngqī suí Shānhǎi.
We are going to Shanghai on Thursday.

(B interrupts): Nǐ shuō cuò le. Shǐ xíngqīsān.
You got it wrong. It's Wednesday.

When a verb takes an object (e.g. 'to take the bus' - 'the bus' being the object of 'to take'), cuò is placed after the verb but before the object. Le can be put either after cuò or after the object providing that the object that follows the verb is not a very long phrase. For example:

Záogāo, wǒ diàn cuò le cāi.
Damn it! I ordered the wrong dish.
object

Wǒ zuò cuò chē le mà?
Have I taken the wrong bus?
object

6 Use of bié

The word bié, meaning 'do not', is only used in imperative sentences (e.g. 'Don't smoke'). It is always placed before the verb. For example:

Bié jí. Hái yǒu shūjīān.
Don't worry. There's still time.

Bié gāosu Sàisài wǒ zài zhèr.
Don't tell Sàisài that I'm here.

7 Xià ge and xià yì...

In Lesson 3, we learnt the phrase xià ge when it was used in xià ge xíngqī (next week) with yì omitted. The complete form is xià yì ge xíngqī. Yì is usually omitted when it is followed by the measure word gè. Numbers other than yì cannot be omitted. For example:

xià liàng ge xíngqī
next two weeks

xià sān ge yuè
next three months

We have also learnt that some nouns require measure words other than gè. In these cases, you must use xià + number + that measure word to mean 'next'. For example:

yì liàng xíngqīchē one bike → xià yì liàng xíngqīchē next bike

sān zhāng piāo three tickets → xià sān zhāng piāo next three tickets

There are a couple of nouns such as zhān (stop), bù (step), etc., which can be used as measure words. In this case, you must use xià + number + noun to mean 'next'. For example:

yì zhān one stop → xià yì zhān next stop

liàng bù two steps → xià liàng bù next two steps

8 Use of gānhào

This phrase is always placed before verbs. For example:

Wǒ gānhào yào qù huóchē zhān. Wǒ dài nǐ qù.
I happen to be going to the railway station. I'll take you there.

Wǒ wàng le Zhōngwén zěnme shuō 'toilet'. Gānhào nà ge rén hui shuō yídān Yingwén.
I forgot how to say 'toilet' in Chinese. Just as well that chap could speak a little bit of English.
Exercises

Exercise 1

Use de to form one complete sentence from the pairs of sentences below. Then translate them into English:

Example: Chuan hong maoyi (wear red jumper).
Nà ge rén shì wò de gége.
Change to: Nà ge chuan hong maoyi de rén shì wò de gége.

(a) Ou dongwuyuan (go to the zoo). Wb m3i san zhang piao.
(b) Gang dao (just arrived). Nà ge nánhái shì Lào Liú de érzi.
(c) Changchang chi dao (always be late).
Wáng jìnlí bù xǐhuān nǎxié rén (nǎxié means 'those').

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with appropriate measure words:

(a) Tā mǎi le liàng ______ zhēnsī lingdài.
(b) Yī ______ qu huǒchē zhàn de piào duō shǎo qián?
(c) Nǐ zuò cuò chē le. Zhè ______ chē bù qū huǒché zhàn.
(d) Tā mǎi le wū ______ Qīngdào pǐjū.

Exercise 3

What do you say to yourself when you realize that:

(a) you have taken the wrong bus
(b) you have ordered the wrong dish
(c) you have called someone the wrong name
(d) you have bought the wrong coffee

Exercise 4

You tell your friend not to:

(a) worry
(b) take a bus
(c) tell Lao Wang how old you are
(d) speak English
(e) lend his bike to Liu Hong

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Next stop is the zoo.
(b) I didn't know that you were going away for the next two weeks.
(c) You need to get off at the next stop and change to bus number 12.
(d) Is there anybody called Kan Jiā in this hotel?
(e) Sorry, I didn't hear it clearly.
(f) Please speak slowly.

Dialogue 2

Mǎi huǒchē piào 买火车票 Buying train tickets

Chen Xiaojuan, who is an American Chinese horn in Taiwan, is travelling in China by herself. She wants to take a train journey from Chendu to Guilin.

CHÉN XIÀOJUÁN: Qǐng wén, zhè shì shòupiào chū ma?
TICKET ASSISTANT: Shì de.
CHÉN XIÀOJUÁN: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí zhāng qù Guilín de huǒché piào.
TICKET ASSISTANT: Shénme shìhou zǒu?
CHÉN XIÀOJUÁN: Xià ge xǐngqīsān, jù shì liúyù sì hào.
TICKET ASSISTANT: Nǐ dàsuàn chéng nà cí lièché?
**Notes to Dialogue 2**

### 9 Use of the verb zǒu

The verb zǒu has several meanings. In Dialogue 2, it means ‘to leave’. However, it can also mean 'to get there', 'to walk', etc. depending on the context. For example:

**A:** Nǐ māmā shénnéme shíhou zǒu?  
When is your mother leaving?

**B:** Nǐ xiǎng zǒulū huí shí zuò ché?  
Do you want to walk or take the bus?

**Qù nǐméndé dàxué, zěnmé zǒu?**  
How do you get to your university?

Zǒu dào di yī gè liùkǒu, wǎng dōng guāi.  
*Walk to the first junction, then turn east.*

### 10 Use of jiù shì

This phrase is always used to explain things further and sometimes to reinforce a certain piece of information. It can be broadly translated as ‘that is . . .’. For example:

**A:** Nǐ qīzi shénnéme shíhou dào?  
When is your wife arriving?

**B:** Xià ge xīnqìlǐu, jiù shì sānyuè sān hào.  
Next Saturday, that is, 3 March.

Sometimes, there is no need to translate jiù shì into English. For example:

Tiejūn, jiù shì Xiàoméi de jiéjie, jiè gěi le wǒ tāde zìxīngché.  
Tiejun, Xiaomei’s elder sister, lent me her bike.
11 Use of cì

All the passenger trains in China are numbered. Cì, meaning 'number', is used between a number and that train in the same way as lù is used between a number and a bus or tram. For example:

jiù cì lièché  no. 9 train shìbā cì lièché  no. 18 train

12 Difference between huǒché and lièché

Huǒché is a general term for trains whilst lièché usually refers to a specific train. For example:

Wǒ bù xihuan zuò huǒché.
I don't like taking trains.

Shíyì cì lièché shìdì diǎn líng wù fāché.
Train no. 11 departs at 14:05.

It is inappropriate rather than wrong to use huǒché for a specific train. The term lièché is often shortened to ché. For example:

Shíyì cì ché dào le ma?  Has the number 9 train arrived?
Zhè shì qù Guilín de ché ma?  Is this the train to Guilin?

13 Difference between chéng and zuò

There is no difference in meaning between these two terms. Both chéng and zuò can be followed by road vehicles, planes and ships when the meaning 'to take' or 'to catch' is intended. The only difference is that chéng is more formal than zuò. For example:

(A train-conductor says to a customer)
Huānyíng nín chéng ěrshíyì cì lièché.
Welcome to [travel with] no. 21 train.

When the phrase chéng/zuò + means of transportation precedes the verb qù (to go), it means 'to go by train/bus, etc.' For example:

Xiaojuān zuò huǒché qù Guilín.
Xiaojuan is going to Guilin by train.

14 Use of bù cuò

Literally, bù cuò means 'not bad'. However, the Chinese bù cuò actually means 'quite good' or 'quite well'. For example:

Zhè ge fándiàn bù cuò.
This hotel is quite good.

A:  Nǐ fānghùn zhènme yàng?
How are your parents these days?
B:  Bù cuò, xièxiè.
Quite well, thank you.

15 More on making comparisons

In Lesson 8, we learnt to make simple comparisons. For example, we learnt how to say 'A is older than B', but we did not learn how to say 'A is five years older than B', 'B is not as old as A' or 'B is less expensive than A'. Let us compare these three sentences:

Pattern: A + bì + B + adjective

Dōng Mín bǐ Gú Liáng dà.
Dong Min is older than Gu Liang.

Pattern: A + bì + B + adjective + specifics

Dōng Mín bǐ Gú Liáng dà wù suí.
Dong Min is five years older than Gu Liang.

Pattern: B + méi or méi yǒu + A + adjective

Gú Liáng méi Dōng Mín dà.
Gu Liang is not as old as Dong Min.

Let us see some more examples:

Yíngwò bǐ ruànwò guì wūshí kuài.
Hard-sleepers are fifty yuan more expensive than soft-sleepers.

Xīn Qín bǐ Míáo Lán kuài yī fēnzhōng.
Xin Qin is one minute faster than Miao Lan.

Yíngwò méi ruànwò guì.
Hard-sleepers are less expensive than soft-sleepers.

Jíntiān méi yǒu zúo tiān lěng.
Today is not as cold as yesterday.
Exercises

Exercise 6

You want to tell the railway ticket-assistant that you want to buy:
(a) two tickets to Beijing
(b) one ticket to Shanghai on 8 March
(c) three hard-sleepers to Guilin
(d) two tickets for the number 26 train

Exercise 7

Make as many comparative sentences as possible based on the two sentences in each group:
Example: Yingwò piào wúshí wú kuài. Ruánwò piào yì bǎi kuài.
Yingwò piào bǐ ruánwò piào piányì sǐshìwǔ kuài.
or Ruánwò piào bǐ yingwò piào guī sǐshīwǔ kuài.
or Yingwò měi yǒu ruánwò guī.
(a) Qingdào píjiǔ yì kuài qǐ máo yì píng.
Běijīng píjiǔ yì kuài yī máo yī píng.
or Xiǎoméi sānshíyī súi.
Andrew sānshí súi.
(b) Xiǎoméi sānshíyī súi.
(c) Lǎo Wáng juéde Zhōngguó fàn háochī.
Lǎo Wáng juéde xīcān ('western food') bù tài háochī.
(d) Běijīng de xiàtiān hén rè.
Lúndūn (London) de xiàtiān bù tài rè.

Exercise 8

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
(a) The train arrives in Guilin at 13:05 the following day.
(b) I leave on Friday, that is, 25 March.
(c) My parents are quite well healthwise.
(d) What time does the number 67 train depart?

Vocabulary

ché cì  train number
mùdídí  destination
Questions

A  Nà cí chē qù Kūnmíng?
B  Lìushíjiù cí chē jǐ diǎn fāchē?
C  Qú Xiàmén de lìchē jǐ diǎn fāchē?
D  Qú Lánzhōu de chē shǐqī diǎn fāchē ma?
E  Lìushíjiù cí chē qù nǎr?

2  Below are four sentences. Read each sentence first and then decide if the interpretation below is correct or not by writing 'true' or 'false'. If you have the recording, listen to the sentence first, and then decide if the interpretation is 'true' or 'false':

(a)  Wǒ xiăo mǎi sān zhāng qù Yúnăn de huóchē piào.
    I'd like to buy three train tickets to Yunnan.
    true

(b)  Wǒ māmā bù xiǎng zuò wǎnshāng fāchē de huóchē.
    My mother doesn't like taking trains.
    true

(c)  Rúguǒ méi yìngwǒ dehuá, wǒ jiù mǎi mìngtiān de ruānwò.
    If there aren't any hard-sleepers, I'm not going.
    true

(d)  Qīng zuò shí lù chē qù Běijīng Fándiàn.
    Please take the number 10 bus to get to the Beijing Hotel.
    true

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- ask about the availability of hotel rooms
- describe the kind of room you would like to have
- use ordinal numbers with appropriate measure words
- make some complaints
- recognize more characters

Dialogue 1

Yōu kòng fāngjiān ma? 有空房间吗?
Any vacancies?  

Jonathan has just finished a conference in Beijing, and he would like to stay on for a couple of days in a hotel near the centre of the city. So he has checked out of the conference hotel and goes into a downtown hotel.

JONATHAN:  Qing wēn, nímen yǒu kòng fāngjiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST:  Yào kàn qǐngkuǎng. Nǐ yào dàn rén fāngjiān hǎishì shuāngrén fāngjiān?
JONATHAN:  Dān jiān.
RECEPTIONIST:  Zhū jǐ tiān?
JONATHAN:  Sān tiān.
RECEPTIONIST:  Rāng wǒ cháchā. (after checking the computer) Zhēn qiǎo! Yǒu yī jiān kòng fāngjiān.
JONATHAN:  Dān jiān dāi wèishēng jiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST:  Dāi.
JONATHAN:  Duō shǎo qiān yī tiān?
In the context of booking into a hotel, kòng fángjiān can mean ‘vacancy’ or ‘rooms available’. For example:

Duibǐng. Wǒmen méi yǒu kòng fángjiān.
Sorry. We don’t have any vacancies.

Nǐ zhīdào Běijīng Fándiàn yǒu kòng fángjiān ma?
Do you know if there are any rooms available in the Beijing Hotel?

2 Phrase kàn qìngkuàng

This is a very useful phrase. We actually learnt the term qìngkuàng in Lesson 5 in sentences such as Gāosu wǒ nǐdài qìngkuàng (Tell me about yourself). The phrase Kàn qìngkuàng or Yāo kàn qìngkuàng means ‘It depends’. For example:

A: Nǐ míngtiān qu yóuyǒng ma?
Are you going swimming tomorrow?
B: Kàn qìngkuàng.
It depends.

If you want to say ‘It depends on something’, you must say Yāo kàn + something. For example:

A: Nǐ xiǎng mǎi zhěnsì língdài ma?
Do you want to buy some silk ties?
B: Yāo kàn jiàgé.
It depends on the price.

A: Nǐ qí zhìxíngché zhǎnhǎn ma?
Do you go to work by bike?
B: Yāo kàn tiānqì.
It depends on the weather.

3 Shortening of noun phrases

Some noun phrases or proper nouns sometimes get shortened by omitting certain parts. Unfortunately, there are no rules to follow. Below are a few phrases we have already learnt which can be shortened:

dānrén fángjiān  →  dān jiān  single room
shuāngrén fángjiān  →  shuāng jiān  double room
Běijīng Dàxué  →  Bēi Dà  Beijing University
4 Use of ăi

In Lesson 7, ăi was used as a verb to mean ‘to take’ or ‘to bring’. Here it is also used as a verb but to mean ‘to include’ or ‘to have’ (in the sense ‘to come with’ as opposed to ‘to possess’). For example:

Nide făngjian ăi wēishēng jiàn ma?
Does your room include a bathroom?

Lǔshìqí cì lièchē ăi kōngtiáo ma?
Does the No. 67 train have air-conditioning?

Âi can also be used as a preposition to mean ‘with’. It is always placed after the noun phrase. For example:

Shuăng jiàn ăi wēishēng jiàn duōshào qián?
How much is it for a double room with bathroom?

Wŏ xihuan kàfèi ăi nímá.
I like coffee with milk.

5 Duō shào qián yī tiān?

When you ask about the hotel tariff in English, you say How much is it per night? In Chinese, you say ‘How much is it per day?’ For example:

Dān jiàn duō shào qián yī tiān?
How much is it per night for a single room?

Bēijīng Fándiàn de shuăng jiàn sān bāi yuán yī tiān.
Double rooms in the Beijing Hotel cost three hundred yuan per night.

In the west, the price is per person. In mainland China, the price quoted for a double room is usually for two people. However, if you choose to have a double room and you are the only customer, you still have to pay the double room price.

6 Use of ordinal numbers with measure words

In Lesson 10, we learnt how to say ordinal numbers, i.e. di yī (first), di ēr (second). When ordinal numbers precede nouns that require the measure word ăi, you must put ăi after the ordinal number if you want to refer to any one of them. For example:

liàng ěr cǎntíng  two dining-rooms  di ēr  ge  the second one
wǔ ěr gā  five university  di wǔ  ge  the fifth one
xuěshēng    students

If the noun used requires a measure word other than ăi, you must put that measure word after the ordinal number. For example:

sān liáng  three bikes  →  di sān liàng  the third bike
zhīxíngché
liăng jiàn  two rooms  →  di ēr jiàn  the second room
făngjiàn
liú cěng  six floors  →  di liú cěng  the sixth floor

Note that the word cěng is only used to refer to different floors in a building. It cannot be used to mean the ‘floor’ in, for example, ‘wooden floor’.

Nouns such as tiān (day), nián (year), etc., which do not require measure words, must follow the ordinal number. For example:

yī tiān  one day  →  di yī tiān  the first day
sì nián  four years  →  di sì nián  the fourth year

Exercises

Exercise 1

Below is the price information in a hotel brochure. Read it first and then answer the questions in Chinese:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fangjian zhòngléi</th>
<th>Jiage (měi tiān)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dānrén fàngjiàn (bū dài wēishēng jiàn)</td>
<td>¥55.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānrén fàngjiàn (dài wēishēng jiàn)</td>
<td>¥65.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuăngrén fàngjiàn (bū dài wēishēng jiàn)</td>
<td>¥122.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuăngrén fàngjiàn (dài wēishēng jiàn)</td>
<td>¥185.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

zhòngléi  type
měi tiān  each day/ everyday

(a) Dān jiàn dāi wēishēng jiàn duō shào qián yī tiān?
(b) Shuăng jiàn dāi wēishēng jiàn duō shào qián yī tiān?
(c) Shénme fàngjiàn wūshíwù yuán yī tiān?
Exercise 2

You tell the receptionist at a hotel that you would like:

(a) a single room with bathroom
(b) a double room with bathroom
(c) a single room for three nights

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Do you have any rooms available?
(b) My room does not have a telephone.
(c) Your room is on the fourth floor.
(d) The third bike on the left is mine.

Dialogue 2

Diàndèng huài le 电灯坏了 The light is not working

The following morning, Jonathan bumps into the duty manager of the hotel

Duty manager: Záoshang hào. Nǐ zuòwăn shuí de hào ma?
Jonathan: Lāoshí shuō, shuí de bù hào.
Duty manager: Zěnme huí shì?
Jonathan: Zuótiān wǎnshàng, gébǐ tángjiàn hěn chǎo. Cháo dào bānyè liǎng diǎn.
Duty manager: Zhěn bāoqián. Wǒ hū chīli zhuì jiān shì.
Jonathan: Xièxiè. Ó, duì le. Wǒde tángjiàn ī yǒu gé diàndèng huài le.
Duty manager: Shì ma? Wǒ yǐdīng ràng rén qù xiū. Hái yǒu bìde wèntí ma?
Duty manager: 早上好。您昨晚睡得还好吗？
Jonathan: 老实说，睡得不好。
Duty manager: 怎么回事？
Jonathan: 昨天晚上，隔壁房间很吵，吵到半夜两点。
Duty manager: 真抱歉。我会处理这件事。

Vocabulary

lǎoshí shuō 老实说 frankly speaking/to be honest
shi 事 thing/matter
Zěnme huí shì? 怎么回事? What's the matter?
gebǐ 隔壁 next door
chǎo 吵 to be noisy
bānyè 半夜 early hours of the morning
zhēn bāoqián 真抱歉 many apologies
chǎi 处理 to see to/to handle
zhě jiān shì 这件事 this matter
jiàn 件 [measure word, see Note 10]
duì le 对了 right/by the way
lǐ 里 inside
diàndèng 电灯 light [lit. 'electric light']
huái le 坏了 to have broken/does not work
ràng rén 让人 to send for someone
xiū 修 to repair
wèntí 问题 problem
zǎnshì 暂时 at the moment/temporarily

Notes to Dialogue 2

7 Zěnme huí shì?

This is a very colloquial phrase. The complete phrase should be Zěnme yī huí shì? (lit. 'How one thing?' – huí is another measure word for matters). This phrase is usually used if something has gone wrong and you want to find out about it. It means 'What's the matter?', 'What's the problem?' or 'What happened?' The word shì, which is a different word from shì (be), is a general term used to refer to abstract things. For example:

Wǒ mínghóng yǒu shì. I've got things to do tomorrow.

Shénme shì?
What is it?
8 More on the past tense

So far, we have learnt two different ways to indicate a past event or an event which is related to the past by using le or guo together with some verbs. However, you must not use either of the above two devices in sentences which describe a stable state of affairs in the past as opposed to momentary action. In the former case, the past tense is indicated by time-related phrases such as zuótiān (yesterday), shàng ge xíngqì (last week), etc. In particular, le or guo must not be used in the following four sentence types:

(a) Sentences with static verbs such as shì (to be), yǒu (to have), xiǎng (to want), xǐhuàn (to like), zhīdào (to know), etc. For example:

Liǎng nián qián, tā yǒu yì liǎng zìxíngchē.
He had a bike two years ago.

Qu nǐ, tā shì dào yóu shì.
She was a tourist guide last year.

Zhùwàn, wǒ bù xiǎng chì fàn.
I didn’t want to eat last night.

(b) Sentences with verb-adjectives or the word zài (to be at/in). For example:

Zhùwàn, gēbì hén chāo.
Next door was very noisy last night.

Zhùótiān, wǒ bāba bù zài jiā.
My father wasn’t at home yesterday.

(c) Sentences with verbal phrases followed by de. For example:

Zhùwàn, wǒ shuì de hén hǎo.
I slept very well last night.

(d) Sentences negated with méi or méi yǒu (see Note 17 of Lesson 3)
You may have noticed that verbs used in the above sentences cannot be negated by méi yǒu or méi.

9 Use of dào

Dào (until) can be used after a verbal phrase, verb or verb-adjective to describe the duration of an event. For example:

Wǒ děng tā dào shí’èr diǎn.
I waited for him until twelve o’clock.

Tāmén cháo dào hén wán.
They were noisy all night.

Usually, if the verb is a two-syllable word, put dào after the first syllable and omit the second syllable. Let us take kǎimén (to open) as an example:

Cānfūng kǎi dào wǎnshāng shí diǎn.
The restaurant is open until ten o’clock.

10 Measure word jiàn

This is the same jiàn as in yī jiàn máoyì (one jumper) in Lesson 8, but it is different from the jiàn as in yī jiàn fāngjiān (one room). Let us see how these two measure words differ in the following phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yī jiàn shì</td>
<td>fourth tone</td>
<td>件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lìăng jiàn máoyì</td>
<td>fourth tone</td>
<td>件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān jiàn fāngjiān</td>
<td>first tone</td>
<td>间</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11 Use of Dui le

This is used when the current topic of conversation reminds you of something. It has the same effect as Oh, yes/right in English when used in those circumstances. For example:

A: Xiǎo Lì qǐng wǒ chì wǎn fàn.
Xiao Li has invited me to dinner.

B: Dui le. Wǒ wàng le gào su nǐ . . .
Oh, right. I forgot to tell you . . .
A: Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng qù Shànghǎi de huǒché piào.
I bought a train ticket for Shanghai.

B: Dui le. Lǐ Bīng shuō tā yě qù Shànghǎi.
Oh, yes. Li Bing says she is going to Shanghai as well.

12 Use of lǐ

The word lǐ, meaning 'inside' or 'in', indicates the position of an object. It is always placed after the noun. For example:

Nimende fāngjiān lǐ yǒu wēishēng jiān ma?
Lit. Your room inside have bathroom [question word]?
Is there a bathroom in your room?

Wǒde qiánbāo lǐ méi yǒu qián.
Lit. My wallet inside not have money.
There is no money in my wallet.

Note that lǐ usually changes to neutral tone when used in the middle of sentences.

13 Something + huài le

Literally, huài means 'bad'. So we can say huài rén (bad person), huài zhùyi (bad idea), etc. When huài le follows a noun, it means something 'does not work', 'is broken' or 'has gone bad'. For example:

Tāde fāngjiān lǐ yǒu ge diàndēng huài le.
One of the lights in his room is not working.

Wǒde xǐxíngchē huài le.
My bike is broken.

Māma, wǒ juéde kāo yā huài le.
Mum, I think the roast duck has gone off.

14 Construction ràng + somebody + do something

In this context, the verb ràng means 'to ask' (see ràng in Lesson 3). For example:

Lào Wáng ràng wǒ dài nǐ qù yǐnháng.
Lao Wang asked me to take you to the bank.

Andrew ràng wǒ wèn nǐ dé fùmú hǎo.
Andrew asked me to say hello to your parents.

When rén (person) follows ràng, rén in this context means 'somebody'. Thus ràng rén can mean 'to send for somebody' or 'to ask someone'. For example:

Wǒ yídǐng ràng rén qù xiū nǐde dēng.
I'll definitely send someone to fix your light.

Mù Yīng huì ràng rén gěi wǒ mǎi yì zhāng huǒché piào de.
Mu Ying will ask somebody to buy me a train ticket.

Exercises

Exercise 4

Which is the odd word out in each group below?

(a) hé kāfèi  chǐ kǎo yā  chǐ zào fān  diàndēng
(b) chūlí  dān jiān  shuāng jiān  wēishēng jiān
(c) Yīngguórén  Zhōngguórén  Méiguórén  fǎndiàn
(d) Wěishènme?  Zěnmé hui shí?  Shénme shìhou?

Exercise 5

Pair off the verbs on the left with nouns on the right:

| (a) xiū  | 1 zhè jiān shì     |
| (b) chūlí | 2 lìwù          |
| (c) yǒu  | 3 diàndēng        |
| (d) mǎi  | 4 gōnggōng qíché   |
| (e) kān  | 5 kōng fāngjiān    |
| (f) děng | 6 pëngyou         |

Exercise 6

You complain to the duty manager in your hotel that:

(a) the light in your room is not working
(b) people next door are very noisy
(c) your room is too cold
Exercise 7

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) Many apologies.
(b) Frankly speaking, ...
(c) Did you sleep well?
(d) It depends.
(e) Sifang asked me to tell you that she is leaving next Thursday.
(f) There is no money inside my wallet.
(g) A: Any other problems?  
B: Not for the moment.

Exercise 8

Describe the following in the past tense:

(a) your room's temperature yesterday
(b) you were not in a going-out mood last night
(c) your neighbour being noisy last night
(d) the room you had did not have a bathroom

Reading comprehension

There are a few odd things in the following dialogue. Pick out the strange words or phrases. Then you need to decide whether to cross them out or to replace them with more suitable words or phrases.

Emily Brown has walked into a hotel in Taiwan. She wants to find out if there are any rooms available.

Receptionist: Nǐ hǎo.
Emily: Xiēxiē. Nimen yǒu kòng fāngjiān ma?
Receptionist: Yào kān qǐngkuàng. Nǐ yào wèishēng jiān háishì shuāng jiān?
Emily: Yào dàn jiàn. Dàn jiàn dài yǒuyōng chí ma?
Receptionist: Dāngrán dài. Nǐ dāsuàn zhǔ jǐ tiān?
Emily: Liǎng ge tiān.
Emily: Duō shǎo qián yì tiān?
Receptionist: Yì bǎi bāshí yuǎn. Xíng ma?
Emily: Xíng. Wǒ yào le.

Alan is doing his doctorate in Buddhism. He is now in Beijing to do some research. Alan is going to call his old friend Li Man, whom he met in England two years ago.

Alan: Wēi, qǐng zhāo yǐxià Lǐ Mǎn.
Lǐ Mǎn: Wǒ jiù shì. Nǐ shì shéi'a?
Alan: Wǒ shì Alan. Cóng Yǐngguó lái de Alan.
Lǐ Mǎn: Zhēn de! Nǐ shì shénme shìhou lái de? Wǒ zěnme bù zhídào?
Alan: Shàng ge xíngqīsī lái de. Shì línshì juédìng.
Lǐ Mǎn: Wǒ tài jìdòng le. Nǐ shénme shìhou lái kán wǒ?
Alan: Shénme shìhou dōu xíng. Nǐ juédìng.
Lǐ Mǎn: Jīntiān wǎnshàng xíng ma?
2 Some telephone expressions

If you want to speak to someone, you can say one of the following:

Qing zhao yixia Li Man?
Lit. Please look for Li Man.
Could you get Li Man please?

Note that the expression yixia has the same effect, i.e. mitigating the abruptness, as it had in Lesson 3.

Qing wen, Li Man zai ma? Is Li Man around please?

If you happen to be the one who answers the telephone and speak first, you can say one of the following:

Qing wen, ni zhao shei?
Lit. Please ask, you look for who?
Whom do you want to speak to, please?

Wei, ni shi nali?
Lit. Hello, you are whereabouts?
Hello, who is calling?

3 Use of . . . cong . . . lai . . .

In English, prepositional phrases such as from England come after the verb. In Chinese, they occur before the verb. For example:

Wang xiaojie cong Xiang Gang lai.
Lit. Miss Wang from Hong Kong come.
Miss Wang comes from Hong Kong.

Suppose you do not know where Miss Wang comes from. The unknown information is 'Hong Kong'. Thus, the question should be:

Wang xiaojie cong nor lai?
Lit. Wang Miss from where come?
Where does Miss Wang come from?

4 More on the link word de

In the dialogue, Alan explains who he is by saying Cong Yingguo lai de Alan (The Alan from Britain). The word de links the verbal
phrase with the noun (see Note 4 in Lesson 11). The complete sentence should be:

Wō shì cóng Yingguó lái de Alan.
I am the Alan from Britain.

Now you can see that the above sentence can be taken apart into two simple sentences:

(a) Wō shì Alan.
(b) Wō cóng Yingguó lái.

5 Construction shì . . . de

This construction has many usages. Let us look at two of them here. First, it is used in interrogative sentences which ask about the time, the place or manner of an action that happened in the past. The word shì is placed before the phrase that is being emphasized and de comes either at the end of the sentence or after the verb. For example:

Ni shì shénme shihou lái Běijīng de?
When did you arrive in Beijing?

Ni shì shénme shihou lái de Běijīng?
Ni shì zēnme lái de?
How did you get here?

Without shì . . . de, the above first two sentences become:

Ni shénme shihou lái Běijīng?
When are you coming to Beijing?

And the last sentence becomes Ni zēnme lái?, which means ‘How do you get here?’ or ‘How are you going to get here?’

Second, the construction is used in positive sentences that emphasize the time or manner of a past action. For example:

Wō shì bābā nián kāishi xuē Zhōngwén de.
I started to learn Chinese in eighty-eight.

Wō shì qì xìxingchē lái de.
I came by bike.

Note that shì is often omitted in the above two cases. Thus we have:

Ta jī diàn xià bān de?
What time did he leave work?

Wō zuò gōnggōng qíché lái de.
I came by bus.

Let us compare the use of le and shì . . . de in describing a past action:

Tā zuōtiān lái le.  She turned up yesterday.
Tā shì zuōtiān lái de. She arrived yesterday.

Tā zuōtiān lái le is merely a statement about a past event (i.e. to confirm that something happened yesterday), whilst Tā shì zuōtiān lái de emphasizes the time ‘yesterday’ as opposed to any other time.

6 Use of shì at the beginning of sentences

You may have noticed that the pronoun ‘it’ is seldom used in Chinese. Thus, the structure ‘It is/was . . . ’ is sometimes replaced by Zhè shì . . . (This is/was . . .). For example:

Zhè shì línshì juédìng ma? Was it a last-minute decision?

The pronoun zhè is often omitted. So shì occurs at the beginning of a sentence:

Shì línshì juédìng.  It was a last-minute decision.
Shì Wáng Fāng ma? Is that Wang Fang?

7 More on question words used in statements

Certain question words, when used in statements, especially in conjunction with the emphatic word dōu, function as indefinite pronouns. Note how the meaning changes accordingly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word item</th>
<th>In questions</th>
<th>In statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shénme shihou</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>whenever / at any time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nár</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zēnme</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>by whatever means</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the moment, let us concentrate on how to use shénme shihou in conjunction with dōu, which can be placed after shénme shihou. For example:

Shénme shihou dōu xìng.
Lit. Whenever be fine.
Whenever you like.
Dòu can also be placed after the verb, that is, if a verb is used. For example:

Zànmén shénme shíhou yóuyòng dòu xíng.

Lit. We whenever swim be fine.

It's fine with me whenever we go swimming.

You can also use shénme shíhou in the first part of a sentence, and dòu in the second part. For example:

Ni shénme shíhou lái, wò dòu zài.

Lit. You whenever come, I be in.

Whenever you come, I'll be in.

If you want to negate the sentences with shénme shíhou and dòu, put the negation word after dòu. For example:

Xiàolì shénme shíhou dòu méi yòu kòng.

Lit. Xiao Li whenever not have time.

Xiao Li never has time.

8 Question word shénme difāng

Literally, shénme difāng means ‘what place’. In addition to ‘what place’, it also means ‘whereabouts’ or ‘where exactly’. For example:

Ni zhù zài Běijīng shénme difāng?

Where exactly in Beijing do you live?

Ni qù le Měiguó shénme difāng?

What places in America did you go to?

9 Use of jiā

Depending on the context, jiā can mean either ‘home’ or ‘family’. For example:

Ni fānmǔ de jiā zài shénme difāng?

Whereabouts is your parents’ home?

Wò jiā yòu hénduò rén. Wò yòu yì ge dà jiā.

There are many people in my family. I have a big family.

10 Use of bù hǎo + verb

As you know, bù hǎo means ‘not good’. However, when you have the pattern ‘something + bù hǎo + verb’, it means ‘It is not easy to do something’. For example:

Huòchē zhàn bù hǎo zhǎo.

Lit. Railway station not easy find.

It's not easy to find the railway station.

Zhōngwén bù hǎo xué.

Lit. Chinese not easy learn.

It's not easy to learn Chinese.

11 Use of jiē

Jiē means ‘to collect’ or ‘to meet’, usually, somebody. For example:

Jintiān wǎnshāng bā diǎn bàn, wǒ yào qù huòchē zhàn jiē wǒ māmā.

I'm going to go to the station to meet my mother at half past eight tonight.

Ni xǐyuǎo wǒ qù jiē nǐ mà?

Do you need me to go and collect you?

Exercises

Exercise 1

Complete the following telephone dialogues in as many ways as you can think of:

(a) A: ___________
   B: Wǒjiù shì Lǐ Mán.
(c) A: ________
   B: Duìbùqǐ, Jāně bù zài.
(d) A: ________
   B: Wǒ shì cóng Yǐngguó lái de Alan.
(b) A: Ni shì Běijīng Dàxué Zhōngwén Xī mà?
   B: ________
   A: Qíng zhāo yǐxià Hú Xīnháng.

Exercise 2

Combine the two sentences in each group to make them into one sentence by using de:

Example: Wǒ shì Alan. Wǒ cōng Yingguó lái.
→ Wǒ shì cōng Yingguó lái de Alan.

(a) Sīfāng shì Zhōngguó rén. Sīfāng cōng Xīnjiāpō lái.
(b) Lǐnda shì dà xuéshēng. Lǐnda xué Zhōngwén.
(c) Wǒ de Zhōngwén láoshi shì Zhōngguó rén.
   Tā cōng Zhōngguó dālù lái. (dālù means ‘mainland China’)

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) When did David leave?
(b) I came to work by bike this morning.
(c) Whenever you like. You decide.
(d) He does not like to take a bus, no matter when.
(e) Could you come to collect me?
(f) What time and where exactly shall we meet?

Exercise 4

How do you ask Xiao Li the following in Chinese:

(a) What time did you leave work yesterday?
(b) How did you get to work yesterday?
(c) Was it last night that your younger sister arrived?
(d) When did your younger sister start learning English?

Exercise 5

Make up as many sentences as you can using bù hǎo to mean ‘It is not easy to ...’ and write the English translation after each sentence.

Dialogue 2

Diànhuà hàomǎ 电话号码 Telephone numbers

Jane works in the Hong Kong office of a Canadian telecommunications company. Most of the local employees in the office can speak Mandarin Chinese. It is a busy day today and all the phones are engaged.

JANE: Yongméi, nǐ yòng wàn diànhuà le ma?
YONGMÉI: Yòng wàn le.
JANE: Wǒ gěi zánmen láobān dā gē diànhuà.
YONGMÉI: Tā jīntiān bǔ zài bāngōngshì.
JANE: Shi ma? Nǐ yōu tā jià de diànhuà hàomǎ ma?
YONGMÉI: Méi yǒu. Nǐ kěyì dā diànhuà wèn tāde mǐshú.
JANE: Hǎo zhǔi.
SECRETARY: Èr-liù-bā fēnjī. Qíng wèn, nǎ yī wèi?
JANE: Sì-lìù-èr-yāo-bā-sān.
SECRETARY: Dúi.
JANE: 你用完电话了吗?
YONGMÉI: 用完了。
JANE: 我给咱们老板打个电话。
YONGMÉI: 他今天不在办公室。
JANE: 是吗？你有他家的电话号码吗？
YONGMÉI: 没有。你可以打电话问他的秘书，
JANE: 好主意。
SECRETARY: 二六八分机，询问，哪一位？
JANE: 我是 Jane，我有一件事同你经理商量，听说他今天不在办公室，你可以告诉我他家的电话号码吗？
SECRETARY: 可以，请等一下，听好。号码是四六二幺八三。
JANE: 四六二幺八三。
SECRETARY: 对，
Vocabulary

- yòng 用 to use
- wán 完 [see Note 12]
- láobān 老板 boss
- dà diànhuà 打电话 to make telephone calls/to telephone
- bàngōngshi 办公室 office
- hàomǎ 号码 number
- mishū 秘书 secretary
- fēnji 分机 extension
- Nǎ yí wéi? 哪一位? Who is calling?
- jí shì 急事 urgent matter
- tōng 同 with/and
- shāngliàng 商量 to discuss/to consult
- tīng hǎo 听好 to listen carefully [lit. 'listen well']
- yào 于 one

Notes to Dialogue 2

12 Use of wán after the verb

When you put wán after a verb, it indicates that the action is completed. It is similar to the English phrase to have finished with/doing something. Whenever wán is used after a verb, le must be placed after whatever has been finished. For example:

- Nǐ chī wán wānfān le ma? Lit. You eat finish supper [question word]? Have you finished having your supper?
- Wǒ yòng wán wéishēng jiān le. Nǐ qū yòng ba. Lit. I use finish bathroom. You go use please. I've finished with the bathroom. Do go and use it.

13 More on the preposition gēi

A phrase beginning with gēi... is always placed before the verbal phrase (see Lessons 5 and 8). Thus, if you want to say 'to telephone somebody' or 'to make a phone call to somebody', you say gēi + somebody + dà diànhuà. For example:

- Bié wàng le gēi nǐ māma dā diànhuà. Don't forget to phone your mum.
- Míngtiān wǒ yídǐng gēi nǐ dā diànhuà. I'll definitely give you a call tomorrow.

If you want to mention the number of phone calls made or to be made, put the numerals together with the measure word gēi before diànhuà. For example:

- Zúotiān wǒ gēi zāimen láobān dā le liàng ge diànhuà. Yesterday, I made two phone calls to our boss.

14 More on the omission of de

The word de, which indicates the ownership relationship, is usually omitted before jīa (home/family). For example:

- Nǐ jīa bù hǎo zhāo. It's not easy to find your home.

- Wǒ jīa de jīa bù zài Xīng Gāng. My parents' home is in Hong Kong.

However, it is not wrong to use de. For example, it is perfectly right to say Nǐ de jīa bù hǎo zhāo. But, de must be kept before diànhuà hàomǎ (telephone number). The reason is that the concept of jīa is associated with people whilst diànhuà hàomǎ is just an object (see Note 3 in Lesson 5). For example:

- Wǒ de diànhuà huái le. My telephone has been out of order.

- Nǐ jīa de diànhuà hàomǎ shì shénme? What is your home telephone number?

15 More on the measure word wèi

We learnt this measure word in Lesson 9. The question Nǎ yí wèi? (lit. 'Which one?') is actually a polite way of asking 'Who is it?' on the telephone. For example:

- Wěi, nǎ yí wèi? Hello. Who is it, please?

It is also appropriate to ask Nǐ shì nǎ yí wèi? (lit. 'You are which one?').
16 Preposition tông

You may have noticed by now that prepositional phrases (e.g. Note 13 above) appear before verbal phrases. Tông, meaning ‘with’ or ‘and’, is a preposition. Thus tông + somebody is a prepositional phrase. This phrase must be placed before the verbal phrase. For example:

Wǒ xiǎng tông nǐ de méimei shǎng liàng yì jiàn shì.
Lit. I want with your younger sister discuss one matter.
I'd like to discuss something with your younger sister.

Nǐ xiǎng tông wǒ qù yóuyǒng ma?
Lit. You want with me go swim [question word]?
Would you like to go swimming with me?

Note that tông and hé (and/with) are interchangeable.

17 Qing ting hǎo

Literally, this phrase means ‘Please listen well’. It is like a sort of warning before you pass on a piece of important information on the telephone. It is similar in meaning to the English phrase ‘Here it is’ or ‘Ready?’ For example:

A: Qing gàosu wǒ Xiao Li de diànhuà hàomá?
Please tell me Xiao Li’s telephone number?
Here it is: eight-four-zero-five-six-one.

18 Use of the number yào

Yào is a substitute for yì (one). Yào is used when the number ‘one’ occurs in telephone numbers, room numbers, bus and train numbers, etc. The reason is that the pronunciation of yì is likely to be mixed up with qí (seven) when a series of numbers is uttered. For example, yào is used in the following:

yào-líng-qí fāngjiān
room 107

yào-yào-sān là diànhé
tram no. 113

Wǒ jiā de diànhuà hàomá shì qí-qí-lǐng-wú-bà-yào.
My home telephone number is 770587.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Decide which de (if any) can be omitted in the following sentences. Rewrite the sentence if a de can be omitted:

(a) Wǒde jiéjie shì dàoyóu.
(b) Wómen de jīnglì de bāngōngshì zài èr céng.
(c) Wǒ de diànhuà huái le.
(d) Táde fùmùde jià hên piāoliāng.
(e) Wáng Píng shì cóng Běijīng lái de lǎoshī.

Exercise 7

Fill in the blanks using the prepositions tông or gěi:

(a) Tā měi _____ tāde nǚ péngyou mái liwù.
(b) Qīng _____ wǒ jiéshào yǐxià nǐde tāitai.
(c) Wǒ měi yǒu kǒng _____ nǐ qù yóuyǒng.
(d) Qǐng yǔdīng _____ wǒ dà diànhuà.
(e) Xiǎo Lǐ xiǎng _____ Lǐ jīnglì shǎng liàng yì jiàn shì.

Exercise 8

Rewrite the following sentences using wán. Then translate the rewritten sentences into English:

(a) Nǐ chí wánfàn le mǎ?
(b) Tá yòng diànhuà le.
(c) Tá diàn cǎi le.
(d) Xiǎo Lǐ xiǔ diàndēng le.

Exercise 9

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) It is very expensive to make phone calls in England.
(b) What is your telephone number?
(c) Your father telephoned you last night.
(d) Is there a telephone at your home?
Exercise 10

Re-arrange the words in each group below so that they make meaningful sentences and then translate them into English:

(a) gěi láobān, wàng le, David, dà diànhuà
(b) diànhuà, kěyì, wǒ, hàomā, nǐ, gāosu, ma
(c) tā, bàngōngshī, jīntiān, zài, bù

Character

Exercise 11

Fill in the blank with the right character, and then translate the sentence into English:

(a) 昨天我去______朋友了。
   i) 着  ii) 看  iii) 走

(b) 我______北京住了十年。
   i) 在  ii) 左  iii) 存

(c) 我弟弟______说日文。
   i) 舍 ii) 会  iii) 去

Exercise 12

Read the following dialogue in characters and then answer the questions in English:

A: 那，我六点后再打电话。
B: 好的，再见。

Question 1: Who is phoning whom?
Question 2: Where is Mr. (Teacher) Li?
Question 3: What time will he be back?

Reading/listening comprehension

Read the conversation below, and then answer the questions in Chinese. If you have the recording, listen to the conversation first, and then answer the questions in Chinese.

The following telephone conversation is between two Chinese speakers:

A: Qíng wèn, Wáng Yǔ zài ma?
B: Dúbùqǐ, tā bù zài. Qíng wèn, nǐ shì nǎ yī wéi?
A: Wǒ shì Wáng Yǔ de māmā.
B: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ shì Xiǎo Liú.
A: Nǐ hǎo, Xiǎo Liú. Wáng Yǔ jīntiān shàng bān ma?
A: Qíng nǐ gāosu tā, wǒ zuò shílù cí chē míngtiān wǎnshāng liù diǎn shí fēn dào Shànghǎi. Tíng qǐng le ma?
B: Tíng qǐng le. Nǐ xǐyuǎo tā qù huóchē zhǎn jiě nǐ ma?
A: Tāi xǐyuǎo le.
B: Wǒ yídǐng gāosu tā.
A: Duō xiè.

Questions

A  Wáng Yǔ zài bàngōngshī ma?
B  Shéi gěi Wáng Yǔ dā diànhuà le?
C  Wáng Yǔ de māmā shénmé shíhou dào Shànghǎi?
D  Wáng Yǔ de māmā chéng jì cí lièché dào Shànghǎi?
E  Wáng Yǔ de māmā xiǎng yào tāde érzi qù jiē tā ma?
14 Shèjiāo 社交
Socializing

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to:
- express the number of times you have done certain things
- describe a past event in a more sophisticated manner
- differentiate between the verbs lái/qu and the directional words lái/qu
- ask a question requiring a yes or no answer and indicate it is your guess by using le
- use le to indicate that a new situation has arisen and is still happening
- negate sentences with the adverb yě
- recognize some city names and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Xiàyū le 下雨了 It's raining

Patrick is American and his wife, Meifang, is Taiwan Chinese. They are currently visiting Meifang's family in Taipei. Today, they have been invited to a barbecue party. At the moment, Patrick is chatting with a Chinese woman called Yulan.

YúLÁN: Zhè shì nǐ dì yī cì lái Táiwān ma?
YúLÁN: Zhēn de? Wèishénme?
PATRICK: Dì yī cì, wǒmen lái cānjīa wǒ tāitai de mēimei de hūnli. Dì èr cì, lái guò chūnjié.

Vocabulary

dì yī cì  第一次 the first time/for the first time
jīhū  几乎 almost
měi 每 every
qù nián 去年 last year
cānjīa 参加 to attend/to take part
hūnli 婚礼 wedding
guò 过 to celebrate/to spend
chūnjié 春节 Chinese New Year [lit. ‘spring festival’]
shuō lái huá cháng 说来话长 it's a long story [lit. ‘speak talk long’]
qián 前 ago/before
tóngxué 同学 classmate
yǒu yì tiān 有一大... one day... [lit. ‘have one day’]
làngmàn 浪漫 to be romantic/romantic
ái yō! 哎哟! whoops!
xiàyū 下雨 to rain/raining
jǐn qu 进去 to go in/to go into
tán 谈 to talk/to chat
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Use of di ... ci

Simply add a number between di and ci to form expressions such as di yi ci (the first time/for the first time), di er ci (the second time/for the second time), etc. This phrase is always placed before the verb it modifies or at the beginning of the sentence. For example:

Zhè shì wǒ di èr ci  qù Méiguó.
Lit. This is 2 second time go to America.
It will be the second time that I go to America.

Di yi ci,  wǒ bù zhidao wǒ yìnggài gàn shénme.
Lit. The first time, I not know I should do what.
The first time, I didn’t know what I should do.

2 Use of ci

If you want to say ‘once’, ‘twice’, ‘three times’, etc., add ci to the numeral. Thus we have yi ci, liăng ci, sān ci, etc. These phrases must be placed after the verb. For example:

Méi ge xīngqì, wǒ qí yì ci zìxíngchē.
verb object
I ride my bike once every week.

If these phrases are used in the past tense, i.e. when le or guo is used, they can be placed either after le or guo or at the end of the sentence. For example:

David qù guo sān ci Zhōngguó.
David qù guo Zhōngguó sān ci.

David has been to China three times.

In certain fixed verbal phrases such as dǎ diànhuà, you must put yi ci or liăng ci after the verb or the particle le. For example:

Zuótiān wǒ gěi wǒ māmā dà le liăng ci diànhuà.
I phoned my mother twice yesterday.

If you want to turn the above sentence into a question, use the question word jǐ:

Zuótiān nǐ gěi nǐ māmā dà le jǐ ci diànhuà?
How many times did you phone your mum yesterday?

3 Use of qù in qù nián

Literally, qù nián means ‘gone year’. qù nián is a fixed expression for ‘last year’. You can not use qù with yuè (month) or xīngqì (week). When qù is used before a noun, it means ‘to have gone’ or ‘to have passed’.

4 More on verbs

As prepositions (e.g. 'at', 'in', 'on') are not extensively used in Chinese, one of the ways to articulate an idea expressed in English with a preposition is by using verbs. For example:

Wǒ xiāng mǎi yī zhǎng qù Běijīng de huǒché piào.
Lit. I want buy one go Běijīng train ticket.
I'd like to buy a train ticket to Běijīng.

Di èr ci,  wǒmen lái guò chūnjié.
Lit. The second time, we come spend Spring Festival.
The second time, we came for the Spring Festival.

5 le indicating a guess

If you want to ask a question requiring a yes or no answer and at the same time indicate that it is your guess, put le at the end of a sentence instead of ma and use the rising tone. Phrases such as nàme (so/in that case), zhèmé shuō (in that case), etc. are often used in this case. For example:

Nàme, nǐ bù xiāng qù le?  (↑)
So, you don’t wish to go?

Zhèmé shuō, nǐ jiù shì Wáng jīnglí le?  (↑)
In that case, you must be Mr Wáng the manager?

6 Use of měi

When měi (every) is used before a noun which requires a measure word, the measure word must be used after měi and before the noun. For example:
As measure words are not used before tian (day), nian (year), jia (family), fenzhong (minute), etc., you can simply put mei before them on its own. For example:

měi tiān  every day  měi nián  every year

If you want to say 'every morning/evening', in Chinese you must say 'every day morning/evening'. For example:

měi tiān  every morning  měi tiān  every evening
zǎoshang  wànshang

7 More on the emphatic word dōu

In Lesson 7, we learnt the use of dōu with suǒyǒu de (all). Dōu is also frequently used with měi (every). Simply put dōu before the verb but after the phrase with měi. For example:

Wǒ měi ge yuè hui jī àn wǒ tānū.
Every month, I go home to see my parents.

Tā měi fenzhōng dōu zài xiǎng shàng dàxué.
He is thinking about going to university every minute.

Note that zài in the above sentence indicates the continuous state of the verb xiǎng (to think).

8 More on the verb lái

You must use lái (to come) if you are currently in the place about which you are speaking. For example:

(The speaker is currently at her home:)
Xīǎo Lì lái guǒ wǒ jiā sān cì.
Xiao Li has been to my home three times.

(The speaker is currently in Taiwan:)
Wǒ lái guǒ liǎng cì Tāiwān.
I’ve been here to Taiwan twice.

If you are in one place and talk about some other place you have been to, use the verb qù:

Wǒ qù guǒ sān cì Shānghǎi.
I’ve been to Shanghai three times.

9 More on the omission of de

The sentence sounds awkward if there are more than two occurrences of de – try to omit those which can be omitted. For example, the de in wǒde can be omitted from wǒ de tāitai de mèimei de hūnlǐ. So we have wǒ tāitai de mèimei de hūnlǐ (my wife's younger sister's wedding).

10 Use of qián

The word qián (ago/before) is always placed after a time expression, a verbal clause or a sentence. For example:

Tā shì liǎng nián qián lái Yīngguó de.
duration of time
It was two years ago that he came to Britain.

Shàng dàxué qián, Líu Xiǎohóng shì dǎoyòu.
verbal clause
Before going to university, Liu Xiaohong was a tourist guide.

Wǒ lái Yīngguó qián, měi chī guò xī cān.
sentence
I hadn’t had western food before I came to Britain.

Qù Běijīng Dàxué qián, xiān chāchá dìtú.
verbal clause
Check the map before going to Beijing University.

Note that in the third sentence above, since wǒ, the subject, appears in the first part of the sentence, it must not be repeated in the second part of the sentence.

11 le used to indicate a change of state

When le is used in sentences that describe a present event, it indicates that a new situation has appeared. It also implies that something is happening gradually which was not the case previously. It
is usually put after a verb-adjective or at the end of a sentence. It can be translated by the ‘to be + doing’ pattern. For example:

Wǒ lǎo le.    I'm getting old.  (i.e. I was not old before)
Xiàyǔ le.   It's raining. (i.e. previously it was not)

12 jīn qu versus jīn lai

Literally, jīn qu means 'enter go' and jīn lai means 'enter come'. If you are outside a house and wanting to go in, use jīn qu (to go in/to go into). If you are inside a house and asking someone else to come in, use jīn lai (to come in/to come inside). Here again, qu and lai are directional words, as we saw in Note 16 of Lesson 7, and they usually become toneless. For example:

Xiàyǔ le.  Zànmen jīn qu tān, hǎo ma?
It's raining. Shall we go inside to talk?

Wāimian hén lèng. Nǐmen wèishénme bù jīn lai?
It's cold outside. Why don't you come in?

You can negate jīn qu or jīn lai with bù. When bù is placed before jīn qu or jīn lai, it means 'do not go in' or 'do not come in'. When bù is placed in between jīn and qu or lai, it means 'cannot go in' or 'cannot come in', in which case qu and lai keep their tones as bu becomes a neutral tone in actual speech. For example:

Xīáoli jīn bù qu tā de bāngōngshì.
Xiao Li cannot go into his office.

Wǒ bù zhídào tā wèishénme jīn bù lai.
I don't know why she cannot come in.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Insert le in each sentence below in an appropriate position. Then translate them into English:

(a) Zuótiān wò bàba gěi wǒ dà diànhuà.
(b) Nǐ kàn. Xiàxué.
(c) Rùgōu tā míngtiān hái bù dào, wǒ jù zīōu.
(d) Sān tiān qián, tā chí dào bān ge xiǎoshì.
(e) Wǒ bù xiǎng qù dōngwūyuán. Wǒ lèi.
(f) Zhème shuō nǐ shì Fěixiá?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks below with dí èr cì or liàng cì:

(a) Zhè shì Richard ______ dào Táiwān.
(b) Wǒ chī guò ______ Běijīng kǎo yā
c) Wǒ_______ wǎng le dǎi yàoqí.
d) Zhè ge xīngqì, zànmen láo bān de míshū chí dào le ______.
e) Dì yī cì, shì lǎi Běijīng lǚyǒu, ______, shì lái gōngzuò.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with lái or qu either as the verb or the directional word:

(a) Míngtiān, wǒ dàì nǐ ______ guǎng shǎngdiàn.
(b) Zhè hěn lèng. Zànmen jīn ______ tán, hǎo ma?
c) (On the phone) Nǐ kěyì ràng Xiǎo Lí dǎi nǐ ______ wǒ jià.
d) Záoguāo, wǒ méi dāi yàoqí. Jīn bù ______ wǒde bāngōngshì.
e) (Feixiā knock at Lāo Wáng's door. Lāo Wáng opens the door.)
Fēixiā: Wǒ yǒu yī jiàn shì xiǎng tóng nǐ tánàn. Nǐ yǒu kōng ma?
Lāo Wáng: Yǒu kōng. Qīng jīn ______ tán.

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) I go to work at eight o'clock every morning.
(b) Everybody likes him.
(c) I got to know her two years ago.
(d) She went to Hong Kong twice last year.
(e) I telephone my parents every two weeks.
(f) She is going to her parents' for the Chinese New Year.
Dialogue 2

*Ni zui xihuan na ge difang?*  
你最喜欢哪个地方？ Which place do you like most？

Graham has just come back from a tour in China. He is in Boston today to meet his Chinese friend Chen Ailin. At the moment, he is knocking at Ailin's door.

**Graham:** Ni hao, Graham. Zhen gaoxiong jiantao ni. Kuai jin lai.  
Zuo, zuo.

**Ailin:** Hao de. Ni hao ma, Ailin?

**Graham:** Bu cuo. Xiexie. Ni xiang he diaor shenme?

**Ailin:** (whilst making the tea) Shuoqi Zhongguo, ni de Zhongguo zhi xing zhe me yang?

**Graham:** Hen chenggong.

**Ailin:** Ni qu le na ji ge chengshi?

**Graham:** Beijing, Shanghái, Xi’an, Guilin he Guangzhou.

**Ailin:** Ni zui xihuan na ge difang?

**Graham:** Zhe ge wentí hen nan huidá. Wo hen xihuan Guilin. Nalí fengjing hen mei. Dangdi ren ye hen youhao. Tong tamen tianhua hen you yisi.

**Ailin:** Wo mei qu guo Guilin. Xia ci yiding qu. Ni juede Guangzhou zhe me yang?

**Graham:** Wo bu tai xihuan Guangzhou. Ren tai duó, ye tai re.

**Ailin:** Wo ye bu xihuan Guangzhou. Tingshuo Changcheng hen xiongwei. Shi ma?

**Graham:** Shi de. Shifen zhuangguan. Wo pai le xuduozhao pian...

**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dianr</td>
<td>dianr</td>
<td>a little/some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cha</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuoqi</td>
<td>shuoqi</td>
<td>talking about/to talk about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi xing</td>
<td>zhi xing</td>
<td>the trip to... [lit. 'of trip']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chenggong</td>
<td>chenggong</td>
<td>success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chengshi</td>
<td>chengshi</td>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huida</td>
<td>huida</td>
<td>to answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fengjing</td>
<td>fengjing</td>
<td>scenery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mei</td>
<td>mei</td>
<td>local</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangdi</td>
<td>dangdi</td>
<td>to be beautiful/beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanhua</td>
<td>tanhua</td>
<td>to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youhao</td>
<td>youhao</td>
<td>to be friendly/friendly [<em>you', third tone in isolation</em>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xia ci</td>
<td>xia ci</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changcheng</td>
<td>Changcheng</td>
<td>the Great Wall [lit. 'long city wall']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiongwei</td>
<td>xiongwei</td>
<td>to be grandiose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shifen</td>
<td>shifen</td>
<td>extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuangguan</td>
<td>zhuangguan</td>
<td>to be magnificent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pai</td>
<td>pai</td>
<td>to take/to shoot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhaopian</td>
<td>zhaopian</td>
<td>photograph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes to Dialogue 2**

13 *Lack of qing in many expressions*

In Chinese, the word *qing* (please), as has been mentioned before, is seldom used among friends and on informal occasions. The omission of *qing* does not suggest any lack of politeness or warmth in expressions such as *Kuai jin lai, Zuó*, etc. These expressions are often repeated to make the guest feel that he/she is very welcome. For example:

(At the dinner table, the hostess says:)

*Chí, chí. Bie kēi.*

*Lit.* Eat. eat. Don't be polite.

*Help yourself. Don't be polite.*
14 **Use of zuò**

In English, phrases such as *to call in, to come around, to go to see,* etc. are used to talk about informal visits. In Chinese, the literal translation of similar expressions is 'to go someone's home sit sit' or 'sit for a while'. For example:

**Wǒ kěyì dào nǐ jiā zuò zuo ma?**
Could I come around to see you?

**Zuówǎn, Guǎngmén lái zuò le yihuir.**
Guangmen called in for a while last night.

15 **Use of retroflex ending r**

The sound *r*, pronounced with the tongue rolled backward a bit, is often added to phrases such as *yídiàn, yóu yídiàn, yìhuì* (a while), etc. In such cases, *yí* is usually omitted. For example:

**Nǐ xiǎng hé diàn r shénme?**
What would you like to drink?

**Wǒ yóu diàn r è.**
I'm a bit hungry.

**Dēng huir.**
Wait for a second.

Note that when *r* is added to *diān*, the nasal *n* sound gets dropped off.

16 **Use of ... zhī xíng**

Although this is very much a written expression, it is often used in colloquial speech to refer to a particular trip. Simply put the place name before *zhī xíng*. For example:

**Tíngshuò nǐde Zhōngguó zhī xíng hěn chénggōng.**
I've heard that your trip to China was very successful.

17 **Use of nà jì ...**

Literally, *nà jì* + a measure word means 'which several'. It can be used to ask about either places or people when the questioner assumes that only a few places or people will be named in the reply. For example:

**Nǐ qu guó Ōngguó nà jì ge chéngshì?**
Which cities in Britain have you been to?

**Nǐ zài nà jì jiā gōngsī gōngzuò guo?**
For which companies have you worked?

18 **More on the 'topic structure'**

The topic or theme of a sentence always occurs at the beginning of that sentence. In English, for example, you can say *It is difficult to answer this question*; but in Chinese, you must say 'This question is difficult to answer' or 'Answering this question is difficult'. For example:

**Táde Yìngwén hěn nán dòng.**
Topic
Lit. His English very be difficult understand.
It's very difficult to understand his English.

**Zài Zhōngguó, mái huǒché piào hěn nán.**
Topic
Lit. In China, buy train tickets very be difficult.
Getting train tickets in China is very difficult.

19 **Nǐ juéde ... zěnme yáng?**

This question can be translated as 'What do you think of ... ?'. For example:

**Nǐ juéde Zhāng Hóng zěnme yáng?**
What do you think of Zhang Hong?

**Nǐ juéde Měiguó zěnme yáng?**
What do you think of America?
20 rèn tài duō

The complete sentence should be Guangzhōu de rèn tài duō (lit. 'Guangzhou's people too many'). The reason that Guangzhōu de is omitted is that it can be elicited from the context. Whenever you wish to say 'There are too many . . . in . . .', use the pattern something + tài duō. For example:

Beijing de xíngchē tài duō.
There are too many bikes in Beijing.

A: Táiwān zěnme yàng?
How is/was Taiwan?

B: Hěn yōu yísi. Dànni, rèn tài duō.
Very interesting. But too many people.

21 Negative sentences with yé

In English, 'also' is used in positive sentences whilst either or neither are used in negative sentences; in Chinese, the adverb yé (also) is used in both sentence types. When the sentence with yé is negated, the negation word bù, méi yōu or méi is placed after yé. Let us compare yé used in both positive and negative sentences:

Wōmen yé xīa guò qu cānjiā Xin Hǎi de hūnli.
We would like to attend Xin Hǎi's wedding too.

Tā yé bù xīhuan Zhōngguó fān.
She doesn’t like Chinese food either.

Lǎo Lǐ zuòtān méi lái. Xiāo Wǎng yě méi lái.
Lǎo Lǐ didn’t come yesterday and Xiāo Wǎng didn’t come either.

Exercises

Exercise 5

What do you say on the following occasions:
(a) A friend of yours knocks at your door and you invite him in.
(b) Your neighbour comes around for a chat, and you invite her to sit down.

(b) Your friends have come to see you. You ask them what they would like to drink.
(d) You tell your mother that you are going round to Lǎo Lǐ's.
(e) You are hosting a dinner party, and you ask your guests to help themselves.

Exercise 6

You ask your Chinese friend what she thinks of:
(a) America
(b) summer in Hong Kong
(c) the Beijing Hotel
(d) the locals
(e) David's Chinese

Exercise 7

Negate the following sentences with bù or méi yǒu:
(a) Wō yě xīhuan Zhōngguó fān.
(b) Tā máma yě qu cānjiā Allīn de hūnli le.
(c) Tā yě zhídào yóuyǒng chí jǐ diǎn kǎimén.
(d) Xiāo Zhǎng yě chǐ dào le.

Exercise 8

Translate the following into Chinese:
(a) It is very interesting to talk to the locals.
(b) Which cities did you go to?
(c) How was your trip to Taiwan?
(d) There are too many people in Guangzhou. It's very noisy and very hot in the summer.
Characters

1 Learning to write henduo and dòng

The adjective henduo (many/much)

The left part of henduo is called the 'double person radical'. This is the same henduo as in hén hào (very good/well) and in hén xihuan (to like ... very much).

The verb dòng (to understand)

The left part of dòng is called the 'vertical heart radical' which often occurs in characters that have to do with thoughts and emotions. The right part, which can be used as a surname, is also pronounced dòng when used in isolation. Quite a number of characters have this feature, namely, the left part gives some indication of the meaning and the right part gives some indication of the pronunciation.

Reading/listening comprehension

2 Recognizing the following city/place names

Shànghái Xiˈan
Guǐlín Guǎngzhōu Chángchéng
The Great Wall

Vocabulary

xiāngchù to get along
dù to spend
miyuè honeymoon [lit. 'honey month']

Questions

A Dàyōng de fūmǔ zhù zài shénme difang?
B Dàyōng de fūmǔ cānjìā Shūfāng hé Dàyōng de hūnli le ma?
C Shūfāng de fūmǔ hé Dàyōng de fūmǔ shì dì ěr cì jiānnián ma?
D Shūfāng hé Dàyōng qū shénme dīfang dù miyuè le? Ó ū le duō jiǔ?
2 Read the following phrases aloud and add the correct tone marks:
(a) womende hunli [women's wedding]
(b) gaosu wo nide Zhongguo zhi xing [tell me about your China trip]
(c) qing le xuduo pengyou [have invited many friends]

15 Hǎiwài láixīn
海外来信
Letter from abroad

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to:
• write a simple letter
• use the correct format to write names and addresses on an envelope
• express a continuous action in the past
• express more sophisticated sentences such as 'When I was in China, I . . .'
• recognize some place/country names and write a postcard in characters

Text
Wǒ bǎozhèng 我保证 I promise

Elena and Liu Xiaomei are very close friends. They met when Elena was studying Chinese at a university in Beijing. Although Elena is back in Italy, they write to each other very often. Below is a letter from Elena to Xiaomei.

to: People's Republic of China

Youbiān: 100081
Zhōngguó Běijīng Dōng Zhī Mén Wài Dàjiē 22 Hào 16
Dōng 1 Hào

Líu Xiàoméi Shōu
Crosa Maccarina, Milan, Italy
亲爱的朋友：

你好！

你的来信收到了。我真高兴你喜欢你的新工作。

我一切还好，就是工作太忙。上个星期，我一直在伦敦开会，回来后，忙着写一份报告。每天早上六点半起床，晚上十二点才睡觉。我必须在星期五之前写完这份报告。我知道我好久没给你写信了，请别生气。等这个周末我休息的时候，一定给你写封长信，我保证。

好友，
爱丽娜

2000, 1, 26

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qín'àide</td>
<td>dear [lit. 'close loved one']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xìn</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láixin</td>
<td>letter [lit. 'come letter', see Note 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shōudào</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>new/to be new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìqìè</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiūshì</td>
<td>the only thing is.../but/except for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàngge</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīzhǐ</td>
<td>all the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lúndūn</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāihuì</td>
<td>to attend a meeting/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngxiě</td>
<td>to attend a conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāogào</td>
<td>after/in/... later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qičhuáió</td>
<td>[grammar word, see Note 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bào</td>
<td>[measure word for documents]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shù</td>
<td>report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xié</td>
<td>to get up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 3: 'come letter' refers to a letter that is written to arrive at a new place/letter.

Note 9: ‘grammar word’ is a term used in Chinese grammar.

Note 10: ‘emphatic word’ refers to a word that emphasizes a particular aspect or feature of something.
2 Writing an envelope

When writing a name and address on an envelope in Chinese, you first write the recipient's address in one line at the top of the envelope (use a second line if it is a long address); then write the recipient's name in the centre of the envelope and finally put the sender's address, which is put at the bottom of the envelope towards the right-hand corner. The word shōu is usually put after the recipient's name and it means 'to be received by . . .'. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recipient's address:</th>
<th>XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient's name:</td>
<td>XXX Shōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender's address:</td>
<td>XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In writing the address, the largest unit comes first. So you put the country first (if you write from abroad) followed by the city, then the street name (or name of an organization), and finally the flat number. Note that the recipient's postcode is placed before the address but the sender's postcode goes after the address. For example, if you write to Mr Wang Lisheng whose address is 26 Dongdan Ave., Beijing, postcode 816001 and your address is Flat 6, Block 10, Xi'an Foreign Languages College, postcode 716001, the envelope should look like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yōubōn: 816001 Bēijing Dōngdān Dājīè 26 Hāo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wáng Lisheng Shōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xi'an Wàiguóyǔ Xuéyuàn 10 Dōng 6 Hāo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yōubōn: 716001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you send a letter from abroad, all you need to do is to put 'To: People's Republic of China' in English or in the language that is spoken wherever you are at the top of the envelope (see the envelope in the Text).

3 Difference between xin, láixin and qùxin

The word xin means 'letter'. Literally, láixin means 'come letter' and qùxin means 'go letter'. Láixin refers to the letter you have received; and qùxin refers to the letter you have written to someone. The measure word for letters is fèng. For example:

Zhèr yǒu nǐde yì fèng xīn.
Lit. Here have your one letter. Here is a letter for you.

Xièxiè nǐde láixin.
Thank you for your letter.

Wǒde qùxin nǐ shōudào le ma?
or Nǐshōu dào wǒde qùxin le ma?
Have you received my letter?

Whilst láixin and qùxin are very different, xin can always replace láixin or qùxin.

4 Wǒ yìqiè hǎi hǎo

This is a very common expression used in writing personal letters to mean 'Everything is all right with me'. You can also turn it into a question. For example:

Nǐ yìqiè hǎi hǎo ma?
Is everything all right with you?

5 Use of jiù shí

When a general positive statement is followed by another sentence beginning with jiù shí, a mild criticism is expected because jiù shí in this context means 'the only thing is... ', 'but' or 'except for/except that... '. For example:

xiàng gǎng hěn yōu yìsì, jiù shí xiàtiān tài rè.
Hong Kong is very interesting. The only thing is that it's too hot in the summer.

Nà ge yóuyōng chí hén hǎo, jiù shí yǒu diòn yuán.
That swimming pool is very good except that it's a bit far away.

6 Different terms for 'last', 'next' and 'this'

You can use shàng ge (last), xià ge (next) and zhè ge (this) together with xīngqī (week) and yuè (month), but not with tiān (day) and nián (year). Below is a chart illustrating the differences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zúótiān</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>shàng yuè</td>
<td>last month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīntiān</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>zhè yuè</td>
<td>this month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngtiān</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>xià yuè</td>
<td>next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàng yè xīngqī</td>
<td>last week</td>
<td>qù nián</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhè yè xīngqī</td>
<td>this week</td>
<td>jīn nián</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià yè xīngqī</td>
<td>next week</td>
<td>míng nián</td>
<td>next year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Use of yìzhǐ

When you want to emphasize the continuation of an event, use yìzhǐ in front of zāi to mean 'all the time'. For example:

Zúótiān wǎnshāng, wǒ yìzhǐ zāi xiè xīn.
I was writing letters all night last night.

However, if you want to say 'He was attending a conference in Taiwan last month', you must say Tā shàng yuè yìzhǐ zāi Táiwān kāi huì. Since zāi is used in zāi Táiwān to mean 'in Taiwan', the continuous indicator zāi must not be used. Thus you cannot say Tā shàng ge yuè yìzhǐ zāi Táiwān zāi kāi huì.

8 Use of hòu

In English, after or in is placed before a phrase or a sentence (e.g. *In three days' time ... After he came back ...*) and later is placed after a phrase or a sentence (e.g. *A week later ...*). But in Chinese, hòu (after/in/... later) always occurs at the end of a phrase or a sentence. For example:

Cóng Bāi huilái hòu, wǒ shènzhì bù tài hǎo.
I haven't been very well since I came back from Paris.
Sāntiān hòu, wǒ gěi nǐ dà diànhuà.
I’ll telephone you in three days’ time.

Yì gé xīngqī hòu, Xiǎo Fāng jiàndào le tāde mèiméi.
Xiao Fang met her younger sister a week later.

9 Grammar word zhe

Zhe is placed between the verb-adjective māng (to be busy) and a verb to mean ‘to be busy doing something’. For example:

Wǒ māng zhe zhāo gōngzuò.
I’m busy looking for a job.
Tā māng zhe xué Zhōngwén.
She is busy learning Chinese.

10 Emphatic word cāi

Cāi is an adverb used to indicate that something happens too late (e.g. ‘start, end, etc. too late’). Sometimes, it can be broadly translated as ‘only’ or ‘just’, but other times, it can be translated as ‘until...’ For example:

Nǐ zěnmé cāi qǐchuāng?
How come you just got up?
Wǒ māmā měitiān wǎnshàng shíér dián cāi shuǐjiào.
Every night, my mother doesn’t go to bed until 12 o’clock.

Dàidá zùotiān cāi zǒu.
David only left yesterday.

The sentence Dàidá zùotíán cāi zǒu implies that he planned to leave earlier. Another thing to notice is that the past particle le cannot be used with cāi if the event described happened in the definite past.

11 Use of zài... zhī qiàn

The phrase zài... zhī qiàn means ‘before...’ or ‘by...’, which emphasizes that something must be done by a certain date/day. That certain date/day is always placed between zài and zhī qiàn. For example:

Zài nǐ qù Zhōngguó zhī qiàn, kěyǐ gěi wǒ dā ge diànhuā ma?
Could you give me a ring before you go to China?
Tā bǐxià zài xīngqī wǔ zhī qiàn xiē wán zhè běn shū.
She must finish writing this book by Friday.

12 Use of... de shíhou

The expression... de shíhou (when/while) is placed at the end of the first half of a phrase or sentence. It can be used to describe present, past or future events. For example:

Shàng dàxié de shíhou, wǒ hěn xīhuàn yóuyǒng.
I liked swimming very much when I was at university.

Bù gāoxíng de shíhou, yǒuxiē rén xīhuàn guǎng shàngdiàn.
Some people like to go shopping when they are unhappy.

When... de shíhou is used to describe a future event, the verb dēng (to wait) is usually put at the very beginning of a phrase or sentence. For example:

Dēng zhè gè zhōumò wǒ yǒu kǒng de shíhou, yídīng gěi nǐ xiě fēng cháng xīn.
I’ll definitely write you a long letter when I have time this weekend.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Write a short letter to your family or friend.

Exercise 2

Write the following information on an envelope:

Recipient’s name: Huang Weilei; recipient’s address: Apt. 3, Block 46, 6 Chang An Avenue, Xi’an, postcode 710061, P.R. China. You are the sender and are currently in another country (make up your own address).

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with xīn, láixin or qùxīn:

(a) (Telling someone) Zuòtiān, wǒ shòu dào le sān fēng ________.
(b) (Writing to someone) Wǒ zhēn gāoxíng shòu dào le nǐde ________.

(c) (Telling someone) Wǒde nán péngyou bù xǐhuan xiě
(d) (Writing to someone) Wǒde _______ nǐ shǒu dào le ma?

Exercise 4

Match the words in the left column with those in the right column (there are several possible combinations):

(a) qù 1 tiān (day)
(b) shàng ge 2 nián (year)
(c) mìng 3 xīngqī (week)
(d) xià ge 4 yuè (month)
(e) zuò

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Your home is beautiful but it is not easy to find.
(b) I was at home writing letters all night last night.
(c) I like writing letters to good friends.
(d) Don’t be cross.
(e) I went to the market after work.
(f) Our boss is busy making phone calls.
(g) I only received my parents’ letter yesterday.
(h) I often cycled when I was in China.
(i) He will definitely return you that book by next Monday.

Characters

1 Learning to write yóubiān (postcode), jīe (avenue) and shōu (to be received by . . .)

The character yóu has 由, informally known as the ‘ear radical’ (possibly because it looks a bit like an ear). Note that the radical is on the right side. The left part of yóu 由 gives a clue to the pronunciation because it is pronounced yóu in isolation. The ‘ear radical’ sometimes appears on the left side. For example, the family name Chen 陈 has the ‘ear radical’ on the left. The character biān 有 has the ‘silk radical’ 扁 on the left and the right part 扁 is pronounced biān on its own.

Exercise 6

Write a postcard or short letter in characters. Ask your tutor or a Chinese friend to check it.
Reading comprehension

Read this postcard and then answer the questions in English:

Bòbin:

Nǐ háo! Hǎo jiù méi yǒu shòu
dào nǐde xìn le. Nǐ yǐqiè hǎi hào
ma? Wǒ xià ge yuè bā hào
zuòyòu yào qù Guǎngzhōu kāi
hui. Rúguò nǐ dào shìhòu yǒu
kòng dehuà, wǒ hěn xiǎng
jiànjǐn nǐ. Qǐng hù xìn gāosu
wǒ nǐde diànhuà hàomà.
Lǐn Bòbin

Zhù hǎo
Zhāng Xīn
94. 6. 18
Běijīng Qián Mén 1 Hào
Yóubíán: 100081

Vocabulary

dào shìhòu then/around that time
jiànjǐn to meet
hù xìn to reply [lit. ‘return letter’]
zhù hǎo best wishes [lit. ‘wish well’]
xì department
xīnxiāng post box

Questions

A Who is the recipient of this postcard?
B What is the recipient’s address?
C Where does the recipient work (based on the recipient’s address)?
D Where does Zhang Xin live?
E Why is Zhang Xin going to Guangzhou?
F When is Zhang Xin going to Guangzhou?
G Does Zhang Xin know Bobin’s telephone number?

Grammar summary

This is not an exhaustive summary of Chinese grammar. It is just a summary of the main grammatical concepts which have been introduced in this book.

The pinyin alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>bā</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>nǎ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bǐ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>wǒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>cǎi</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>píng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dì</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>qǐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>tè</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>rì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fā</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>sān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gē</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>tán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hé</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>tū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>tǔ/si/zhǐ</td>
<td>ù</td>
<td>lú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jǐ</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>xià</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>kè</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yǒu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>lèi</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>zǒu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>mā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Word order

It is easier to talk about the word order with the help of some grammatical terms. Let us first define the following terms:

Subject – the topic of a sentence. Nouns, noun phrases, verbal phrases can all function as the subject in Chinese.

Verb – a doing word.

Object – a noun or its equivalent acted upon by (a) a verb whose meaning is incomplete unless followed by something (e.g. in
I play table-tennis, 'table-tennis' is the object of the verb 'play'; or (b) a preposition (e.g. in 'I'm not against him', 'him' is the object of the preposition 'against').

Prepositional phrase – a preposition followed by a noun or equivalent such as place names, etc. (e.g. 'in London').

Word order in Chinese is quite fixed. The common patterns are:

subject + verb + object

Wǒ mǎi dōngxi.
I buy things.

subject + time + verb + object

Wǒ liù diǎn qù mǎi dōngxi.
I'm going shopping at six o'clock.

Tā qù nián lǎi de Yīngguó.
She came to Britain last year.

subject + prepositional phrase + verb + object

Wǒ zài Běijīng jiāndào le tā.
I saw him in Beijing.

object + subject + verb (to emphasize the object)

Xīn wǒ xiě le.
I did write the letter.

Topic structure

In English, the topic or theme of a sentence can be put at the end of the sentence by using the It is ... to ... pattern (e.g. in It is very interesting to talk to him, to talk to him is the topic.) In Chinese, since the 'It is ... to ...' pattern is not used, the topic always occurs at the beginning of a sentence:

Nǐ jiā hěn nán zhāo.
It is difficult to find your house.

Qǐ zìxíngchē hěn yòu yísi.
It is very interesting to cycle.

Nouns

Nouns are the same regardless of number:

Wǒ yǒu yī ge mèimei.
I have one younger sister.

Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge mèimei.
I have two younger sisters.

Articles

Articles such as the, a or an in English do not exist in Chinese. Whether something is specific or general can be inferred from the context:

Tā hái méi huán gěi wǒ shū.
She still hasn't returned me the book.

Wǒ qù shūdiàn mǎi yī běn shū.
I'm going to the bookshop to buy one book.

Wǒ qù mǎi shū.
I'm going to buy some books.

Adjectives

Adjectives are always placed before nouns. De is usually inserted between the adjective and the noun (a) if the adjective is modified by an adverb; and (b) if a two-syllable adjective is used to modify a noun:

hǎo zhǔyì
good idea

hěn hǎo de zhǔyì
the very good idea

xióngwěi de guāngchāng
the magnificent square

Verb–adjectives

In English, adjectives can be preceded by the verb to be; in Chinese, some adjectives can incorporate the verb 'to be' and they become verb–adjectives. For example, the word lǎo is an adjective when it means 'old', but it is a verb–adjective when it means 'to be old'. Thus, the verb shū (to be) is not used in this case. When these verb–adjectives are used, they are usually modified by adverbs such as hěn (very), tīng (rather), etc. in front of them:

Wǒ hěn máng.
I am very busy.

Dāngdī rén hěn yòu hāo.
The locals are very friendly.

Measure words

Measure words are a distinctive feature of the Chinese language. A measure word is usually used between (a) a numeral and a noun; and (b) a demonstrative pronoun (i.e. zhě (this) or nà (that)) and a noun. The most common measure word is gě:

Wǒ yǒu sān ge didī.
I have three younger brothers.

Zhě gé rén hěn qīguāi.
This person is very strange.

Different measure words are used with different nouns. Below are some commonly used measure words:
Currency words, unit words and nouns such as tiān (day), nián (year), etc. do not require measure words:

- bā yuán eight yuan
- liàng tiān two days
- si jīn two kilos
- wù nián five years

**Pronouns**

1. **Personal pronouns**

   - wǒ  I, me
   - nǐ  you (singular)
   - nín you (polite form)
   - tā he/she/, him/her
   - wǒmen we, us
   - nǐmen you (plural)
   - tāmen they, them

   These personal pronouns can be used in both subject and object positions:

   - Wǒ xiāng wǒde māmā. I miss my mother.
   - Wǒde māmā xiāng wǒ. My mother misses me.

   Tā is seldom used to mean 'it' as a subject. It occasionally occurs in the object position:

   - Mōmō tā. Touch it.

   Most of the time, any reference to 'it' can be inferred from the context:

   - Wǒ xīhuán Zhōngguó fān. I like Chinese food. It's very tasty.
   - Hěn hǎochī.

   Similarly, tāmen is rarely used to refer to things.

2. **Possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns**

   - Possessive adjective (in front of nouns)
   - Possessive pronoun (at the end of the sentence)

   - wǒde  my
   - nǐde  your
   - tāde  his/her
To form possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns, simply add 

de to personal pronouns wò, nǐ, tā, wùmén, nǐmén, tāmén:

Wǒ de shū diū le.  My book is missing.
Zhè bèn shū shì wǒde.  This book is mine.

3 Demonstrative pronouns

zhè this
nà that
zhèxiē these
nàxiē those

Zhè or nà never occurs in object positions. Zhè is used in many

cases where 'it' is used in English:

Zhè hén yóu yìsi.  It is very interesting.

When the measure word ge is added to zhè and nà, we have zhè
ge and nà ge. These then are demonstrative adjectives:

Nà ge rén hén gāo.  That person is very tall.
Zhè liàng zìxíngchē huái le.  This bike is broken.

Numbers

1 Cardinal numbers

0-99:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0-9</th>
<th>10-19</th>
<th>20-29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lìng</td>
<td>shí  ten</td>
<td>ěrshí twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī</td>
<td>shíyī eleven</td>
<td>ěrshíyī twenty-one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěr (liǎng)</td>
<td>shí ěr twelve</td>
<td>ěrshí ěr twenty-two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān</td>
<td>shísān thirteen</td>
<td>ěrshísān twenty-three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sì</td>
<td>shì four</td>
<td>ěrshì four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔ</td>
<td>shíwǔ fifteen</td>
<td>ěrshíwǔ twenty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liú</td>
<td>shíliù sixteen</td>
<td>ěrshíliù twenty-six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qī</td>
<td>shíqī seventeen</td>
<td>ěrshíqī twenty-seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bā</td>
<td>shíbā eighteen</td>
<td>ěrshíbā twenty-eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔ</td>
<td>shǐjiǔ nineteen</td>
<td>ěrshǐjiǔ twenty-nine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The numbers 30, 40, etc. up to 90 are formed by adding shí (ten) to
sān (three), sì (four), etc. Thus we have sānshí (thirty), sìshí (forty), etc. to jiǔshí (ninety). The numbers 31-9, 41-9, etc., use

the same principle as 21-9 above. An apostrophe (’ ) is used to
mark the break between two syllables whenever there is ambiguity
in pronunciation. Thus we have shí’ěr (twelve) instead of shì ěr.

100-10,000

The same pattern continues with bā (hundred), qiān (thousand) and

wàn (ten thousand):

yībǎi ěrshí  one hundred and twenty
wǔqiān lǐng liùshí five thousand and sixty

2 Ordinal numbers

Simply add di to cardinal numbers:

dì yī first
dì shíyī eleventh
dì ěrshí’ěr twenty-second

Verbs

Chinese verbs remain the same regardless of first-, second-, or

third-person pronouns, singular or plural:

wǒ shí  I am
tā shí  he/she is
tāmén shì they are

Verbs do not indicate tenses. Let us take the verb qù (to go) for

example:

Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó.  I am going to China tomorrow.
Zhùótiān, wǒ méi qù kàn le.  Yesterday, I didn't go to see my

péngyou.
Tā qù tǔshūguǎn le.  He has gone to the library.

He went to the library.

The future and the past are indicated by the time phrases such as

míngtiān (tomorrow), and zuótiān (yesterday) and some grammar

words such as le (see Grammar Words below).
Grammar words (particles)

1 le indicates that:
(a) an action happened in the past:
Wǒ zuótiān mài le yī liàng zìxíngchē. I bought a bike yesterday.
(b) an action has happened and may still be happening:
Tā qù tūshūguǎn le. He has gone to the library.
(He has not come back yet.)
(c) there is a change of state (when used at the end of a sentence):
Xiàyǔ le. It's raining. (It wasn't raining before.)
Wǒ lèi le. I'm getting tired. (I wasn't tired before.)

2 guo, although also indicating a past event, puts emphasis on the aspect that something has been experienced:
Wǒ chǐ guō Zhōngguó fán. I have had Chinese food.
Tā guō Méiguó liǎng cì. He has been to America twice.

3 zài indicates the continuous state of a verb. It is placed before the verb:
Wǒ zài chǐ wān fàn. I am having supper.

Negation words

1 bú is used with most verbs and verb–adjectives:
Wǒ bú xǐhuan zhè ge chéngshì. I don't like this city.
Tā bú máng. He is not busy.

2 méi is used to negate the verb yòu (to have):
Wǒ méi yòu gēge. I do not have brothers.

3 méi yòu or méi is used to indicate that:
(a) something has not happened:
Wǒ méi yòu (or méi) chǐ guō Zhōngguó fán. I haven't had Chinese food.
(b) something did not happen:
Tā zuótiān méi yòu (or méi) lái shàng bān. She did not come to work yesterday.

Questions

To form questions that require a 'yes' or 'no' answer, simply add the particle ma to the end of a sentence:
Ni shì Yīngguó rén. → Ni shì Yīngguó rén ma?
You are British. Are you British?

Another way of forming a yes/no question is to repeat the verb with the negation word bú or méi as appropriate inserted in between:
Ni chǐ bú chǐ dàsuàn? Do you eat garlic?
Ni yòu méi yòu jiējiě? Do you have elder sisters?

When question words such as shénme (what), shénme shǐhou (when), nár (where), etc. are used to ask questions, the sentence order is not changed. The question word occupies the position in the sentence where the information required should appear in the reply:
A: Ni jiào shénme?
What are you called?
B: Wǒ jiào Li Xìng.
I am called Li Xìng.
A: Ni shéme shíhou qù Zhōngguó.
When are you going to China?
B: Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó.
I'm going to China tomorrow.

Directional words

In English, words such as in and out are used to indicate the direction of a verb, for example, Please come in and I'd like to go out.
In Chinese, directional words such as lái (lit. 'come'), qù (lit. 'go'), etc. are used after a verb in these cases:
Qing jīn lái.
Please come in.
Wǒ xiǎng chū qù yìhuír.
I'd like to go out for a while.
Adverbs

1. When adverbs describe adjectives, they are placed before adjectives:
   Tā fēicháng piàoliang. She is extremely good-looking.

2. When adverbs describe the manner of an action:
   (a) they are placed before the verb in an imperative sentence (i.e. order, suggestion):
   Kuài zǒu. Wǒmen yào chí dào le. Lit. Quickly walk. We will late arrive.
   Hurry up. We'll be late.
   (b) they are placed after the verb and the linking word de if the degree or result of an action is indicated:
   Wǒ zuòtiān wǎnshang shuì de hǎo. I slept well last night.

Many adverbs usually have the same form as adjectives.

Prepositions

Prepositions are not used as often as in English. The preposition zài (at/in) can also be used in the object position, in which case it means ‘to be at/in’:

Wǒ zài Běijīng dài le sì tiān. I stayed in Beijing for four days.

Tā zuòwàn bù zài. He wasn't in last night.
Exercise 6
(a) B: Nǐ hào. (b) B: Bù kèqi. (c) B: Shì de . . . (d) B: Bù shì . . .
(e) B: Xiāng, xièxié.

Exercise 7
(a) Lào Wáng bù xiāng hé kāfēi. (b) David bù hén gāoxìng.
(c) David hén bù gāoxìng. (d) Wǒde yīlú bù hén shùnli. (e) Wǒde yīlú hén bù shùnli. (f) Tā bù shì Jones xiānshēng.

Exercise 8
(a) Hén lèi. (b) Yǒu yìdiǎn lèi. (c) Bù tài lèi.

Exercise 9
(a) wǒde, tāde; (b) Tāde; (c) wǒde, Andrew de.

Reading/listening comprehension questions
A John. B No, he had a very rough trip. C He asks John if he would like a coffee. D He says that he would very much like a coffee.

Lesson 2

Exercise 1
1(c) Germany; 2(h) Italy; 3(b) France; 4(a) Japan; 5(e) Hong Kong; 6(d) Australia; 7(f) New Zealand; 8(g) Singapore.

Exercise 2
(a) Yingguórén; (b) Méiguórén; (c) Zhōngguórén; (d) Yídàlǐrén;
(e) Táiwānrén; (f) Xiānggāngrén; (g) Aòdàlǐyārén; (h) Riběnrén.

Exercise 3
(a) Yingwén; (b) Yingwén; (c) Zhōngwén; (d) Yídàiwén; (e) Zhōngwén; (f) Fáwén; (g) Zhōngwén/Yíngwén/Guǎngdōnghuà (Cantonese); (h) Rìwén.

Exercise 4
(a) Nǐ jiào shénme? (b) Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén? (c) Nǐ hui shuò Yīngwén ma?

Exercise 5
(a) yīdiǎn; (b) yǒu yìdiǎn; (c) yǒu yìdiǎn; (d) yìdiǎn.

Exercise 6
(a) A: Nǐ shì nā guó rén? (b) A: Tā shì nǎlǐ rén? (c) B: Nǎlí, nǎlí.
(d) B: Bù hui.

Exercise 7
(a) Nǐ zhǐdào Amy shì nǎ guó rén ma? (b) Wǒ bù hui shuò Yīngwén. (c) Tā bù shì Riběnrén. (d) Wǒ bù zhǐdào tā jiào shénme.

Exercise 8
For your reference only:

Exercise 9
(a) B: Nǎlí, nǎlí/Guòjiāng. (b) B: Sǎnsī suì zuòyòu. (c) B: Bù duì.

Exercise 10
(a) zhǐdào; (b) rènshī/zhǐdào; (c) zhǐdào; (d) rènshī.

Exercise 11
(a) Tā jiào shénme? (b) Xiǎo Fāng shì nǎlǐ rén? (c) Amy jīnnián duō dà le?
Exercise 12

(a) Tā kànshang qu bù hén gāoxìng. (b) Simon kànshang qu hén niánqìng. (c) Nǐ kànshang qu yǒu yídàn lèi.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

1 A Yes, she does. B Britain. C Yes, a little. D No, she does not. E Yes, she very much likes to.

2 Tones (a) xièxiè (fourth, neutral); (b) bù zhǐdào (fourth, first, neutral); (c) bù dū (second, fourth); (d) Yíngguórén (first, second, second); (e) shuō Zhōngwén (first, first, second); (f) tài hào le (fourth, third, neutral); (g) zàijiàn (fourth, fourth); (h) wǒ yè shì (second, third, fourth).

Lesson 3

Exercise 1

For your reference only:

Exercise 2

(a) John shì bù tài máng. (John is not very busy.) (b) Shūlàn de gōngzuò shì hén máng. (Shulan is very busy with her work.) (c) Wáng Lín kànshang qu shì tīng lǎo. (Wang Lin does look rather old.)

Exercise 3

(c) A: Yānzhōng qu nàr le? B: Tā qu Méiguó le.

Exercise 4

(a) Andrew qù le Měiguó. / Andrew qù Méiguó le. (Andrew went to America / Andrew has gone to America.) (b) Elenā hē le kāfēi. / Elenā hē kāfēi le. (Elena had her coffee / Elena has had her coffee.) (c) Zuōtiān Xíngháng shuōqí le Tiānyì. (Xinhang mentioned Tianyi yesterday.)

Exercise 5

(a) jiāndào; (b) jiānmiàn; (c) jiānmiàn; (d) jiāndào.

Exercise 6

(a) Rènshì. Tāmén shì hǎo péngyou. (b) Bù rènshì. (c) Méi jiēhūn. (d) Tā shì WP gōngsī de fū jīnglǐ, yě shì Rachel de nán péngyou.

Exercise 7

(a) shìwū ge Méiguórén; (b) liàng ge Zhōngguórén; (c) sān ge nán de; (d) bā běi kāfēi; (e) sì ge hǎo péngyou.

Exercise 8

(a) Yǒu. (b) Méi yǒu. (c) Zhēn kěxī!

Exercise 9

(a) Yānzhōng qu nàr le? (b) Shēi shì WP gōngsī de fū jīnglǐ? (c) Shūlán shì nà guó rén? (d) Nǐ xià ge xīngqī qu nàr?

Exercise 10

(a) Wǒ xià ge xīngqī bù qù Zhōngguó. (I'm not going to China next week.) (b) Jane méi yǒu jiēhūn. (Jane hasn't got married.) (c) Xiǎo Fāng méi yǒu Yídài kāfēi. (Xiao Fang hasn't got Italian coffee.) (d) Wāng Pīn bù rěnshī Měixīn. (Wang Pin does not know Meixin.) (e) Zuōtiān wǒmen méi qù Lúndūn. (We didn't go to London yesterday.) (f) Wǒ bù xiǎng hē kāfēi. (I don't want to have coffee.)
Exercise 11
(a) jiù; (b) shì; (c) shì; (d) jiù.

Exercise 12
(a) 女人
(b) 中国人
(c) 你好
(d) 我说中文

Reading/listening comprehension questions
A true; B false; C false; D true; E false; F true; G false.

Lesson 4

Exercise 1
(a) shì diàn èrshìwǔ (fén); (b) liàng diàn bàn / liàng diàn sānshí (fén); (c) shì’ér diàn sān kè / shì’ér diàn sìshìwǔ / shì’ér diàn chà shìwǔ / shì’ér diàn chà yī kè; (d) liù diàn shì fén; (e) sì diàn yǐ kě / sì diàn shìwǔ (fén); (f) jiǔ diàn wǔ fén / jiǔ diàn líng wǔ (fén).

Exercise 2
(a) 4 jiǔ diàn yǐ kě; (b) 6 sì diàn chà wù fén; (c) 5 liàng diàn sìshìwù; (d) 2 shì’yì diàn èrshì fén; (e) 1 bā diàn líng wǔ; (f) 3 shì’ér diàn bàn.

Exercise 3
(a) Zàoshāng hǎo. (b) Xiànzáì ji dián le? (c) Qīng wěn, nǐ jiào shénme? (d) Bù kēqí / Bù xiè.

Exercise 4
(a) cōng ... dào ... (The breakfast is from seven to eight thirty.) (b) fēnzhōng (We have five minutes for coffee.) (c) Xiànzáì ... (It’s half past six now.) (d) yǐjīng (She is already married.)

Exercise 5
(a) Cántīng jí diǎn kǎimén? (b) Nǐ zhīdào cántīng jí diǎn kǎimén ma? (c) Ān yuèjìng sānshí suí le. (d) Qīng kūài lái Yīngguó.

Exercise 6
(a) Duībùqǐ. (b) Qīng wèn, yóuyǒng chí jí diǎn kǎimén? (c) Duībùqǐ.

Exercise 7
For your reference only:
(a) Wǒ qì diàn èrshí chǐ zǎofān. (b) Wǒ shì’ér diàn bān zuòyǒu chǐ wūfàn. (c) Wǒ bā diàn chī wǎnfàn. (d) Wǒ sān diàn zuòyǒu yóuyǒng.

Exercise 8
(a) Bēijīng yǒu ěrshí ge dà fǎndiàn. (b) Wǒmén(de) fǎndiàn yǒu liǎng ge cántīng. (c) Zhè ge gōngshī yǒu Zhōngguórén ma? (d) Bēijīng Fǎndiàn méi yǒu yóuyǒng chǐ.

Exercise 9
(a) Tā shì bù shì Yīngguórén? (Is he/she British?) (b) Nǐ zuìjīn mǎng bù mǎng? (Have you been busy recently?) (c) Zhāng Bīn yǒu měi yǒu nǚ péngyǒu? (Does Zhang Bin have a girl-friend?) (d) Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng qù Zhōngguó? (Do you want to go to China?)

Exercise 10
(a) Duībùqǐ. (b) Xiànzáì ji diǎn le? (c) Cántīng jí diǎn kǎimén? (d) Huíjiān.

Exercise 11

Exercise 12
你想说中文吗？
Reading/listening comprehension questions

I A (b) bù hěn mǎng; B (a) yóuyōng; C (c) chī wūfàn; D (b) shí’èr diàn sānshí; E (a) shí’èr diàn yī kè; F (b) sān diàn.

2 Tones (a) huíjiān (second, fourth); (b) cāntīng (first, first); (c) duìbùqǐ (fourth, fourth, third); (d) dà de (fourth, neutral).

Lesson 5

Exercise 1

1 jiéjie = (b) elder sister; 2 dìdì = (d) younger brother; 3 gēge = (a) elder brother; 4 yéyé = (e) grandfather; 5 mèimei = (c) younger sister; 6 ài’ài = (h) aunt; 7 nǎinai = (f) grandmother; 8 shūshū = (g) uncle.

Exercise 2

(a) Wǒ māma zài hé kāfēi. (My mum is having coffee.) (b) Yíngméi zài chī zǎofàn ma? (Is Yingmei having her breakfast?) (c) Tā bù zài yóuyōng. (He/she isn’t swimming.) (d) Nǐ bābā zài gōngzuò ma? (Is your father working?)

Exercise 3

(a) shāng / qù; (b) shāng; (c) qù / shāng; (d) shāng.

Exercise 4

(a) Jié(hún) le. (b) Yiǐshábái / Elizabeth. (c) Méiguórén. (d) Yòu. (c) Nǚér jiào Méilíng. Érzi jiào Zhígāng. (f) Bù shì. Tā shì dà xuéshēng. (g) Yíngméi shì Shàotáng de mèimei.

Exercise 5

(a) Lǎo Wáng yǒu jì ge hàizī? (b) Nǐ zài Běijīng Fǎndiàn zhǔ le jī tiān? (c) Tā hé le jī bēi kāfēi? (d) Lǐ Píng yǒu jì ge gēge?

Exercise 6

(a) He/she does not live in Beijing. (b) Are your parents still working? (c) Ma Lan is having her breakfast. (d) Wang Lin works at the Beijing Hotel.

Exercise 7

(a) Lào Wáng yǒu jì ge hàizī? (b) Nǐ zài Běijīng Fǎndiàn zhǔ le jī tiān? (c) Tā hé le jī bēi kāfēi? (d) Lǐ Píng yǒu jì ge gēge?

Exercise 8

(a) Nǐ yǒu shìjiān qù yóuyōng ma? (b) Duìbùqǐ, wǒ méi yǒu shìjiān. (c) Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò? (d) Qǐng wén nǐ fǔmǔ hào.

Exercise 9

(a) [no measure word needed]; (b) ge; (c) jiā / ge; (d) ge; (e) běi.

Exercise 10

(a) Wǒ hěn xǐhuān wǒde gōngzuò. (b) Wǒ xiǎng qù kàn wǒ fǔmǔ. (c) Tā huì lái kàn wǒ ma? (d) Fāng Shū zài Běijīng Lúyóu Jú gōngzuò. (e) Nǐ zhù zài nár?

Exercise 11

(a) Wǒ xǐqù Zhōngguó.
(b) Tā xǐqù nǎr?

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A Gu Liang is a translator/interpreter. B Gu Liang is working for Beijing Silk Trading Company. C Yang Ning has got married. D Yang Ning’s wife is a primary-school teacher. E Gu Liang is going to meet Yang Ning’s wife tomorrow night at Yang Ning’s home.
Lesson 6

Exercise 1

(a) Jintiān shì xǐngqíān. / Jintiān shì xǐngqí. (b) Jintiān shì liúyuè jiùhào. (c) Wǒ qǐ hào qù Zhōngguó. (d) Wǒ māmǎ xǐngqíyī lái Táiwān.

Exercise 2

(a) sān tiān [no measure word] (Xiao Fang stayed in Shenzhen for three days.) (b) sān gè yuè (I've got three months.) (c) liàng gè xǐngqì / liàng xǐngqì (My husband wants to travel in China for two weeks.) (d) sì nián [no measure word] (My younger brother worked in Xi'an for four years.) (e) wù gè gēgē (Wang Dongping has five elder brothers.) (f) bāyuè [no measure word] (Paul wants to go to Taiwan in August.)

Exercise 3

(a) Feixiá zài Guǎngzhōu zhù le jǐ nián? (b) Míngtiān shì xǐngqí rì. (c) Andrew xué le jǐ ge yuè Zhōngwén? (d) Wǒ xiāng jǐn nián sān yuè qù Zhōngguó. (e) Xià ge xǐngqíwù shì jǐ hào? (f) Wǒ zhǎngfu (or àiren) yǒu liàng gè dìdī hě yī gě jǐjīe.

Exercise 4

(a) wǒ zúi hǎo de péngyou; (b) tèbì de dà de yóuyǒng chǐ / fēicháng dà de yóuyǒng chǐ; (c) xiǎo cǎnqīng / xiǎo fāndiàn; (d) nà ge niánqīng hē piǎoliàng de dà xuéshèng; (e) zúi lǎo de nán rén.

Exercise 5

(a) Mick dàsuān shénme shíhou qù Zhōngguó? (When is Mick going to China?) (b) Zhāng Jūn zài Táiwān gōngzuò le duō jù? (For how long did Zhang Jun work in Taiwan?) (c) Lǎo Lǐ de nǚér shénme shíhou shāngxué? (When is Lǎo Lǐ's daughter starting school?) (d) Nǐ xiāng zài Shānghǎi dài duō jù? (For how long do you want to stay in Shanghai?)

Exercise 6

(a) zuòyòu; (b) dāyuè; (c) zuòyòu; (d) dāyuè.

Exercise 7

(a) Nǐ xiāng shī'èr diān hǎishí yī diān chǐ wūfān? (b) Nǐ cháng yóuyǒng ma? / Nǐ chángcháng yóuyǒng ma? (c) Nǐ zěnme bù gāoxíng? / Nǐ wéishénme bù gāoxíng? (d) Jīrán nǐ bù è, wǒ jiù xiǎn chī.

Exercise 8

For your reference only:

好 妈 她 她

Reading/listening comprehension questions


2 Tones (a) yíyuè (first, fourth); (b) sān gè yuè (first, neutral, fourth); (c) tèbì dà de fāndiàn (fourth, second, fourth, neutral, fourth, fourth); (d) xǐngqí'èr (first, first, fourth).

Lesson 7

Exercise 1

(a) Pǐngguǒ liǎng kuài qí mǎo wǔ yī jīn. (b) Bōluò liù kuài yī jīn. (c) Xiángjiāo sì kuài liú mǎo wǔ yī jīn. (d) Cǎoméi sān kuài yī mǎo yī jīn. (e) Lǐzi liǎng kuài líng wǔ yī jīn. (f) Wù kuài yī mǎo jiǔ yī jīn.

Exercise 2

(a) yào; (b) xiǎng / yào; (c) yào; (d) xiǎng / yāo.

Exercise 3

(a) Wǒ xiāng mǎi yìxiē Hǎinán Dǎo xiǎngjiāo. (b) Tā bù yào cǎoméi. (c) Wǒ mǎi le liǎng jīn pǐngguǒ (d) Nǐ hǎi yào biéde ma? (e) Wǒ bù zhídào zhè ge duō shào qián. (f) A: Gěi nǐ wù kuài. B: Zháo nǐ liǎng mǎo wǔ.
Exercise 2

For your reference only:
(a) Wǒ zuì xǐhuān lán yānsè. (I like the blue colour most.) (b) Wǒ bǐjiào xǐhuān Zhōngguó fàn. (I quite like Chinese food.) (c) Zhōngwén bǐ Fǎwén nán. (Chinese is more difficult than French.) (d) Shì de. (Yes, it is.)

Exercise 3

(a) with 4 lán tiān (blue sky); (b) with 1 or 3 lǜ píngguō; lǜ chá; (c) with 2 huáng xiāngjiāo; (d) with 1 or 3 hóng píngguō; hóng chá (black tea).

Exercise 4

(a) NT kěyǐ jiě gěi wǒ liǎng ge píngguō ma? (b) Tā bù xǐhuān jiē gěi píngguō yuán. (c) Tā shénmé shǐfú huán gěi wǒ qián? / Tā shénmé shǐfú huán wǒ qián? (d) Wǒ wàng le dài qiánbāo. (e) Xièxiè nǐ dài lǎi xièxiè Zhōngguó chá. (f) Tā dài mǎoyì le ma? (g) Liú Hóng kǎnshāngqu bǐ Paul niánqīng. / Liú Hóng bǐ Paul kǎnshāngqu niánqīng.

Exercise 5

(a) shàng; (b) guāng; (c) qù; (d) shàng.

Exercise 6

(a) Duìbùqǐ. Wǒ chǐ dāo le. (b) Méi wènti. (c) Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ‘good bargain’? (d) Wǒ míngtiān yīdìng huán gěi nǐ qián.

Exercise 7

(a) Zhè tiáo língdài hán bǎifēnzhǐ wūshí de sī. (This tie contains 50 per cent silk.) (b) Wǒ guāng le guāng shàngdiàn. (I had a look around in the shops.) (c) Táng Bīn jiē gěi le wǒ ěrshí kuài qián. (Táng Bīn lent me twenty yuan.) (d) Tā jǐntiān zào shāng chǐ dào le ěrshí fēnzhōng. (She was twenty minutes late this morning.)

Exercise 8

(a) gòu; (b) zǔgòu de; (c) A: gòu; B: gòu; (d) zǔgòu de.
Exercise 9


Exercise 10

(a) iii) 天; My mother will come to see me tomorrow.
(b) ii) 去; He doesn't want to go shopping.

Exercise 11

我喜欢学中文。

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A (b); B (c); C (a); D (b); E (c); F (b); G (a).

Lesson 9

Exercise 1

(a) Wǒ yào yǐ bèi chénzǐ zhì. (b) Wǒ yào yǐ pǐng pǐjū. (c) Wǒ yào liàng bèi bǎi pútao jiǔ. (d) Wǒ yào yǐxiē Zhōngguó chá.

Exercise 2

For your reference only:
Wǒ yào yǐ ge húntún tāng, yì ge yǔ tóu shāo dōufu hé yì ge jǐdān chǎo fàn.

Exercise 3

(a) Qǐng zuò. (b) Wǒ xiǎng kàn kàn cǎidān. / Wǒ xiǎng kàn yǐxiā cǎidān. / Wǒ kěyǐ kàn yǐxiā cǎidān ma? (c) Qǐng gēng wǒ lái. (d) Wǒ è sǐ le. (e) Qǐng shǎo děng. / Děng yǐxiā. / Děngdēng.

Exercise 4

(a) Alan qu guó Zhōngguó ma? (b) Linda zuò tiān qu Lúndūn le. (c) Tā měi yǒu chǐ guo Zhōngguó fán. (d) A: Nǐ zhǎofàn le ma? B: Hái měi chǐ.

Exercise 5

(a) Wǒ chī bāo le. / Wǒ bāo le. (b) Wǒ zài yào yǐxiē bǐng. / Wǒ hái xiǎng yào yǐxiē bǐng. (c) Qǐng dì gēi wǒ jiāng. (d) Duìbùqǐ, wǒ zài yào yǐ pǐng pǐjū (e) Duō chǐ yǐxiē.

Exercise 6

(a) Rúguò nǐ yǒu shìjiān dehuà, zànmen qù chǐ kǎo yā, hǎo ma? (b) Nǐ déi lái kàn wǒmen. (c) Jǐntiān zàoshang wǒ shǎng bān chǐ dào le érshí fēnzhōng. (d) Rúguò nǐ è dehuà, zànmen xiān chǐ wùfàn, hǎo bù hǎo? (e) Xiǎo Zhāng bù xiǎng qǐng Lǎo Wáng.

Exercise 7

(a) Yóuyǐng chǐ jǐntiān zàoshang kāi de hěn zǎo. (b) Qǐng zào lái. / Qǐng zào yǐxiē lái. (c) Jǐntiān zàoshang wǒ lái de hěn chī. (d) John shuō de hěn kuài.

Exercise 8

(a) Nǐ shuō de bù duì. (b) Wǒ méimeí lái de bù hěn zǎo. (c) Yīngguó de xiàtiān bù hěn ré. (d) Tāde fūmǔ tuìxī de bù hěn zào. (e) Xiǎohuá bù gāoxìng.

Exercise 9

(a) 我妈妈是中国人。
(b) 她没有空。
(c) A: 你去买东西吗？
   B: 是的。
Reading/listening comprehension questions


Lesson 10

Exercise 1

(a) Qing wèn, cèsuō zài nàr? (b) Qing wèn, fūjīn yīu gōngyòng diānhuā ma? (c) Qing wèn, shì lù chē zài nàr? (d) Qing wèn, qù huòchē zhàn zěnmé zōu? (e) Qing wèn, qù Běijīng Fǎdiàn zú jī lù chē?

Exercise 2

(a) Lào Zháng zài Maria de zú biān. (b) Maria zài Lào Zháng de yīu biān. (c) Linda zài Xiǎo Fāng de zú biān.

Exercise 3

I (a) Cèsuō zài gōngyòng diānhuā de zú biān. (b) Gōngyòng diānhuā zài cèsuō de yīu biān. / Gōngyòng diānhuā zài cǎntīng de zú biān. (c) Cǎntīng zài gōngyòng diānhuā de yīu biān.

II (a) Dì èr ge hónglùdēng wàng zuò guāi, zài wàng yōu guāi. (b) Dì èr ge hónglùdēng wàng yōu guāi.

Exercise 4

(a) Tà bù jìde wǒde míngzī. (He doesn't remember my name.) (b) Nǐ bù yǐng gěi wǒ māi liwū. (You don't need to buy me any presents.) (c) Fūjīn měi yīu bāihuò shǎngdiàn. (There's no department store near by.) (d) Wǒ měi kān jiān huòchē zhàn. (I didn't see the railway station.) (e) Wǒ kān bù jiān hónglùdēng. (I can't see the traffic lights.)

Exercise 5

1 Nàr yǒu yī ge yǒu jū. 2 Tà huì shuō Zhōngwén. 3 Wǒ bù néng gāosu nǐ tāde qīngkuāng. 4 Dì yī ge lǎokǒu wàng yōu guāi. Shíwǔ fēnzhōng jiù dāo le.

Exercise 6

(a) Qing wèn, qǐ xīnghē qù Zhōngshān Dàxué xūyào duō jiǔ? (b) Qing wèn, zǒulù qù huòchē zhàn xūyào duō jiǔ? (c) Qing wèn, zú chē qù Tiān'ānmén xūyào duō jiǔ?

Exercise 7

(a) borrow; (b) lend; (c) borrow; (d) lend.

Exercise 8

(a) Wǒ bù xǐn (or bù xiānxǐn) nǐ měi yīu zīxíngchē. (b) Xià ge xǐngqīliū wǒ yào qù Shānghǎi. (c) Frank měi zhāo dào Zhōngshān Dàxué. (d) Nǐ zuīhǎo chā yīxiǎ dítū. (e) Qǐ zīxíngchē dào wǒde dàxué yào yī ge duō xiāoshí. (f) Zhé shí yǐ ge hǎo zhùyí.

Exercise 9

1 (f); 2 (b); 3 (d); 4 (c); 5 (a); 6 (e).

Reading/listening comprehension questions

1 A (c); B (b); C (a); D (b); E (c).

2 Tones (a) Qing wù. (third, fourth); (b) È sī le. (fourth, third, neutral); (c) yǒu kǒng (third, fourth); (d) chī de kuài (first, neutral, fourth); (e) nàr (fourth, neutral); (f) Wǒ bù xǐn. (third, second, fourth).

Lesson 11

Exercise 1

(a) Wǒ mǎi sān zhǎng qù dōngwǔyuán de páo. (I'll buy three tickets for the zoo.) (b) Nà ge gāng dào de nánhái shì Lào Liū de érzi. (The boy who has just arrived is Lào Liū's son.) (c) Wáng jīnglí bù xīhuàn nàxiē chāngchàng chǐ dào de rén. (Manager Wang doesn't like those who are always late.)
Exercise 2

(a) tiáo; (b) zhāng; (c) liàng; (d) píng.

Exercise 3

(a) Zāogāo! Wǒ zuò cuò chē le. (b) Zāogāo! Wǒ diàn cuò cái le. (c) Zāogāo! Wǒ jiào cuò tāde mǐngzi le. (d) Zāogāo! Wǒ má cuò kǎiēi le.

Exercise 4

(a) Biē jī. (b) Biē zuò gōnggōng qīché. (c) Biē gāosu Lào Wáng wǒ duó dà le. (d) Biē shuō Yīngwén. (e) Biē jī gēi Liú Hóng nǐde zìxīngchē.

Exercise 5

(a) Xià yī zhàn shì dōngwǔyuán. (b) Wǒ bù zhūdào nǐ xià liàng ge xīngqǐ yào chūmén. (c) Nǐ xiào xià yī zhàn xià chē. Huán shì'ěr hù gōnggōng qīché. (d) Zhè ge fǎndiàn yǒu rén jiào Kān Jiā ma? (e) Duìbùqǐ, wǒ méi tīng qīng. (f) Qīng mān yīdiàn shuō.

Exercise 6

(a) Wǒ xiǎng mái liàng zhāng qù Běijīng de piào. (b) Wǒ xiǎng mái yī zhāng sānyuè bā hào qù Shānghǎi de piào. (c) Wǒ xiǎng mái sān zhāng qù Guīlín de yīngwō. (d) Wǒ xiǎng mái liàng zhāng ěrshǐliù cǐ lièché de piào.

Exercise 7


Exercise 8

(a) Huǒchē dì ěr tiān shìsān diān líng wú fēn dào Guīlín. (b) Wǒ xǐngqǐwù zōu, jǐ shì sānyuè ěrshǐwù hào. (c) Wǒde fùmǔ shèngfēi bù cuò. (d) Liūshǐqǐ cǐ chē jǐ diān fāché?

Exercise 9

For your reference only:

好看；好吃；好人；买票

Reading/listening comprehension questions

2. (a) true; (b) false; (c) false; (d) true.

Lesson 12

Exercise 1

(a) Dān jiān dà wèishēng jiàn bāshíwú yuán yī tiān. (b) Shuāng jiān dà wèishēng jiàn yì bāi bāshíwú yuán yī tiān. (c) Dān jiān bù dà wèishēng jiān wūshíwú yuán yī tiān.

Exercise 2

(a) Wǒ yào yì jiān dān jiān dà wèishēng jiān. (b) Wǒ yào yì jiān shuāng jiān dà wèishēng jiān. (c) Wǒ yào yì jiān dān jiān, zhù sān tiān.

Exercise 3

(a) Nǐmen yǒu kōng fāngjiān ma? (b) Wǒde fāngjiān bù dài diànhuà. / Wǒde fāngjiān méi yǒu diànhuà. (c) Nǐde fāngjiān zài sì cēng. (d) Zuò biàn dǐ sān liàng zìxīngché shì wǒde.
Exercise 4
(a) diàndèng; (b) chúli; (c) fàndiàn; (d) Shénme shíhòu?

Exercise 5
(a) 3 xiūdiàndèng; (b) 1 chúli zhè jiàn shì; (c) 5 yóu kòng fàngjiàn; (d) 2 mài liwù; (e) 6 kàn péngyou; (f) 4 dèng gōnggōng qìcē.

Exercise 6
(a) Wǒde fàngjiàn li yǒu ge diàndèng huài le. / Wǒde fàngjiàn li de diàndèng huài le. (b) Gèbǐ fàngjiàn hěn chāo. / Gèbǐ de rén hěn chāo. (c) Wǒde fàngjiàn hěn lèng.

Exercise 7
(a) Zhēn bāoqìan. (b) Lāoshì shuò ... . (c) Nǐ shuì de hǎo ma? (d) Kàn qíngkuàng. (e) Sìfāng ràng wǒ gāoù nǐ tā xià ge xíngqí zǒu. (f) Wǒde qiánbāo li mèi yǒu qián. (g) A: Hái yǒu biéde wèntí ma? B: Zànshì měi yǒu.

Exercise 8
For your reference only:
(a) Zuòtiān wǒde fàngjiàn hěn lèng. (b) Zuòwān, wǒ bù xiǎng chūmén. (c) Zuòwān, gèbǐ hěn chāo. (d) Wǒde fàngjiàn měi yǒu wéishēng jiān.

Reading comprehension questions

The odd words or phrases are in italics and the words or phrases that replace them are in the parentheses. If a word/phrase needs crossing out, it is indicated in the parentheses.

RECEPTIONIST: Nǐ hǎo.
EMILY: Xièxiè (Nǐ hǎo). Nǐmen yǒu kòng fàngjiàn ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Yào kàn qíngkuàng. Nǐ yào wéishēng jiān (dān jiān) háishi shuāng jiān?
EMILY: Yào dān jiān. Dān jiān dài yóuyōng chí (wéishēng jiān) ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Dāngrán dài. Nǐ dàsuàn zhù jǐ tiān?
EMILY: Liáng ge tiān. (cross out ‘ge’)

Lesson 13

Exercise 1

Exercise 2
(a) Sìfāng shì cōng Xīnjiāpōlái de Zhōngguórén. (b) Líndá shì xué Zhōngwén de dà xuéshēng. (c) Wǒde Zhōngwén láoshì shì cōng Zhōngguó dàlǜ tái de Zhōngguórén.

Exercise 3
(a) Dádá shì shénme shīfù zǒu de? (b) Jìntiān zàoshang, wǒ shì qí zìxíngchē lái shàng bān de. (c) Shénme shīfù dōu xǐng. Nǐ juédīng. (d) Tā shénme shīfù dōu bù xíhuàn zuò gōnggōng qìcē. (e) Nǐ kěyì lái jiè wǒ ma? (f) Wǒmen jì diàn zài shénme dīfang jiànmǐn?

Exercise 4
(a) Nǐ zuòtiān jì diàn xià bān de? / Nǐ zuòtiān shì jì diàn xià bān de? (b) Nǐ zuòtiān shì zěnme qù shàng bān de? / Nǐ zuòtiān zěnme qù shàng bān de? (c) Nǐ méimi shì zuòtiān wāngshāng lái de ma? (d) Nǐ méimi shì shénme shīfù kāishi xué Yīngwén de?

Exercise 5
For your reference only:
(a) Zhōngwén bù hǎo xué. (It's not easy to learn Chinese.) (b) Shānghǎi huòché zhàn bù hǎo zhào. (It's not easy to find Shanghai railway station.) (c) Guǎngdōnghuà bù hǎo dōng. (It's not easy to understand Canton dialect.)
Exercise 6

(a) Wǒ jiējie shì dāoyóu. (b) Wǒmen jīnglǐ de bǎngōngshì zài ěr cěng. (c) [cannot omit]; (d) Tā fūmúde jiā hěn piāoliang. (e) [cannot omit].

Exercise 7

(a) gěi; (b) gěi; (c) tōng; (d) gěi; (e) tōng.

Exercise 8

(a) Nǐ chí wán wānfàn le ma? (Have you finished with your supper?) (b) Tā yòng wán diànhuà le. (She has finished with the phone.) (c) Tā diàn wán cái le. (He has finished ordering the dishes.) (d) Xiao Lì xiū wán diàndēng le. (Xiao Lì has finished repairing the light.)

Exercise 9

(a) Zài Yīngguó, dā diànhuà hěn guì. (b) Nǐ de diànhuà hàomā shì shénmé? (c) Zuòwán, nǐ bābā gěi nǐ dā diànhuà le. (d) Nǐ jiā yǒu diànhuà ma?

Exercise 10

(a) David wàng le gěi láobān dā diànhuà. (David forgot to phone the boss.) (b) Nǐ kěyì gàosu wǒ nǐ de diànhuà hàomā ma? (Could you tell me your telephone number?) (c) Tā jīntiān bù zài bǎngōngshì. (She is not in the office today.)

Exercise 11

(a) Wǒmen jìnglǐ de bǎngōngshì zài ěr cěng. (b) Wǒmen jìnglǐ de bǎngōngshì zài ěr cěng. (c) [cannot omit]; (d) Tā fūmúde jiā hěn piāoliang. (e) [cannot omit].

Exercise 12

Question 1: Zhangwen is phoning his teacher, Mr. Li.
Question 2: He's gone to the bank.
Question 3: About six o'clock.
Exercise 3
(a) xīn/lái xīn; (b) lái xīn/xīn; (c) xīn; (d) qù xīn/xīn.

Exercise 4
(a) with 2 qù nián; (b) with 3 or 4 shàng ge xīngqī / shàng ge yuè; (c) with 1 or 2 míngtiān / míng nián; (d) with 3 or 4 xià ge xīngqī / xià ge yuè; (e) with 1 zuòtiān.

Exercise 5
(a) Nǐ diǎn hǎo piāoliàng, jiǔ shí bù hǎo zhào. (b) Zuòwàn wǒ yǐzhǐ zài jiā xiè xīn. (c) Wǒ xīhuan gěi hǎo pénghào xiè xīn. (d) Bié shèngqí. (e) Xià bān hòu, wǒ qù le zìyǒu shíchāng. (f) Wǒmén de lǎobān máng zhe dǎ diànhuà. (g) Wǒ zuòtiān cái shòu dào wǒ fùmǔ de xīn. (h) Zài Zhōngguó de shìhou, wǒ chángcháng qì xīnqǐngcè. (i) Tā yǐdīng huì zài xià ge xīngqī yī zhī qián huán gěi nǐ nà běn shū de.

Reading/listening comprehension questions
### Chinese–English glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>不好找</td>
<td>not easy to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不见</td>
<td>no see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不客气</td>
<td>you are welcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不用</td>
<td>no need/do not need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不过</td>
<td>however/but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不说</td>
<td>to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不才</td>
<td>[emphatic word]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐馆</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>参加</td>
<td>to attend/to take part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐厅</td>
<td>restaurant/dining-room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>草莓</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>流层</td>
<td>floor/layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to check</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶常</td>
<td>often/always/frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶长</td>
<td>to taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶长</td>
<td>long/to be long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长城</td>
<td>the Great Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长</td>
<td>to be noisy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>到</td>
<td>to stir-fry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>维</td>
<td>car/bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乘</td>
<td>to take/to catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>成功</td>
<td>to be successful/success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>城市</td>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>橙子汁</td>
<td>orange juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吃</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吃迟</td>
<td>late/to be late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>抽空</td>
<td>to make time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>穿</td>
<td>to wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>处理</td>
<td>to see to/to handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出门</td>
<td>to be away/to go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>纯毛</td>
<td>pure wool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>春节</td>
<td>Chinese New Year [lit. 'spring festival']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>春天</td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>次</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>从...到...</td>
<td>from...to...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>从事来...</td>
<td>to come from...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>错</td>
<td>wrongly/to be wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>大</td>
<td>big/large/old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>要大</td>
<td>to be big/to be large/to be old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **a** | [auxiliary word] |
- **ai** | [exclamation word] |
- **äiyò!** | whoops! |
- **ba** | [auxiliary word] |
- **bá** | eight |
- **bába** | father/dad |
- **bái** | hundred |
- **bái mǐ fàn** | boiled rice |
- **bǎifēnzhǐ** | per cent |
- **bǎihuò shǎngdiàn** | department store |
- **bàn** | half |
- **bàn jǐn** | a quarter of a kilo |
- **bǎngōngshì** | office |
- **bānyè** | midnight |
- **bāo** | to be full |
- **bāogào** | report |
- **bǎozhěng** | to promise |
- **bāozǐ** | steamed bread with fillings |
- **bāyuè** | August |
- **Bēijīngrén** | Beijing person/people |
- **běn** | [measure word for books] |
- **bǐ** | to be compared with |
- **biàn** | side |
- **bié** | do not |
- **biéde** | anything else/other |
- **bìjiāo** | quite/rather/relatively |
- **bǐng** | pancake |
- **bǐxù** | must |
- **bù** | no/not |
- **bù cuò** | quite good/quite well |
- **bù dui** | no/incorrect |
大的 

dà de

大的

the large one/the big one

da

大

to make telephone calls/to telephone

diànhuà
da

大

university student

dà xuèshēng
da

大

to stay

dài
da

带

to include/to have

dài (qu)
da

带

to take

dài (lai)
da

带

to bring

dàjìé
da

大

dang

to become

dāng

dàng

dàng

to become

dèng

dàngqì

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng

dàng
今天  就是  那个女人
今天晚上  就是  那个女人
既然...就...  as...then
今天晚上...le  就...了  [emphatic structure]
今天晚上...le  就是  the only thing is...
局  就是  that is
觉得  to think/to feel
决定  to decide/decision
咖啡  coffee
开  to be open/to open
开会  to attend a meeting/to attend conference
开门  to be open/to open
看  to see/to visit/to watch/to read
看得见  to be able to see
看上去  to look/to seem
烤  to roast
刻  quarter
可惜  pity that...
可以  could/can/may
空  vacant/free
恐怕  I'm afraid...
快  soon/quickly/to be fast/to be quick
快块  [currency word]
来  to come/to come to
来  to arrive
来信  letter
浪漫  to be romantic/romantic
老  to be old/old
老板  boss
老实说  frankly speaking/to be honest
了  [grammar word]
累  to be tired
冷  to be cold/cold
里  inside
两  two
[measure word for vehicle]
[unit of weight]
星期二 
Tuesday

星期天 
Sunday

新鲜 
fresh

to repair

休息 
to rest/to take time off work

学 
to learn/to study

需要 
to require/to need

鸭 
duck

颜色 
colour

红 
one

to want

要 
to be going to

星期天 
Sunday

你是 
tobe interesting

邮编 
postcode

友好 
to be friendly/friendly

邮局 
post-office

游泳 
to swim

游泳池 
swimming pool

鱼 
fish

月 
month

在 
[continuous particle]

在 
to be at/to be in/at/in

再 
tonce again

在...之前 
before...by...

再见 
goodbye

咱们 
we [colloquial term]

暂时 
at the moment/temporarily

早 
early

早饭 
breakfast

糟糕 
Damn it!

早上 
morning

怎么 
how

怎么 
why

怎么一回事? 
What's the matter?

怎么样? 
How are you?/How are things?

怎么走? 
How do I get there?/How do I get to...?

炸 
to deep fry

张 
[measure word]

丈夫 
husband

找 
to look for

找 
to return [the change]

找到 
to succeed in finding something

照片 
photograph

这 
this

着 
[grammar word]

这次 
this time

这个周末 
this weekend

这件事 
this matter

这么 
so

这么说 
in that case

真 
really

抱歉 
many apologies

真的? 
really?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zhēn kěxī!</td>
<td>What a shame!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn qiǎo</td>
<td>What a coincidence! / coincidentally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn sī</td>
<td>pure silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèxiè</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhī xíng</td>
<td>the trip to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīdào</td>
<td>to know / to be aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīyǒu</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōng</td>
<td>kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó</td>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngwén</td>
<td>Chinese [as a language]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngxué</td>
<td>secondary / middle school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngyú</td>
<td>at last / finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōumò</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhù</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuāngguān</td>
<td>to be magnificent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhòng</td>
<td>subject / major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zìyóu</td>
<td>free / freedom / to be free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǒu</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǒu</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúgǒu de</td>
<td>enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúi</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúi hǎo</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúihào</td>
<td>ideally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúihòu</td>
<td>the last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuijin</td>
<td>recently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúō</td>
<td>sit / to sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúō</td>
<td>to take (e.g. bus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòtiān</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòyǒu</td>
<td>about / approximate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìǎnr</td>
<td>ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìdiǎn/yōu</td>
<td>ask at / in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yì)diǎn</td>
<td>at last / finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bān jīn</td>
<td>temporarily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yí xiǎo pán</td>
<td>at the moment /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò yǒu</td>
<td>to attend / to take part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bòu</td>
<td>attend a meeting /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎwǔ</td>
<td>to attend a conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qì</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qìánmian</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòu</td>
<td>avenue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suòyóude</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái hǎo</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎo ba</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐzhǐ</td>
<td>be (am, is, are)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐhǔ</td>
<td>beautiful / to be beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐjīng</td>
<td>Mei 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìgòng</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Méigúórén</td>
<td>beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hé</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huídá</td>
<td>before . . . by . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shénme</td>
<td>Beijing person /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu réa</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biéde</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shénme shíhou</td>
<td>big / large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píngguǒ</td>
<td>block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàyuè</td>
<td>boiled rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jírán</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shū</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǔyào</td>
<td>Beijingren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàngjiào</td>
<td>zōnshì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wēishéng jiān</td>
<td>canjiā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǚhuì</td>
<td>kūi hui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bānyuè</td>
<td>bānyuè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiǔliàn</td>
<td>dājié</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎngjiào</td>
<td>xiǎngjiào</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yínháng</td>
<td>wēishéng jiān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà</td>
<td>shí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāng</td>
<td>piào liǎng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niú ròu</td>
<td>bān mǐ fàn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píjiū</td>
<td>shū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhú . . . zhī qián</td>
<td>shūdiàn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I'm sorry!
Exeuse me
ideally
if
in fact
in that case
include/to have
inside
introduce
Is it all right?/OK?
Is it OK?
Is that so?
It depends
It doesn't matter/
It's all right/
It feels . . .
it is (somebody's)
to turn . . .
it's a long story
January
journey/trip
July
just
just a second
key
kind
king prawn
know (somebody)
know/to be
aware of
last
last minute/
temporary
last year
late
learn/to study
leave
left
morning
most
mother/mum
Mr
Mrs
must
name
near by/close by
nearly
new/to be new
next
next door
next stop
next time
next year
nice/to be nice
nineteen ninety-four
no
no/incorrect
no need/do not need
no problem
noodles
not
not not bad
not easy to find
not really/not at all
now
number
o'clock
October
of course
office
often/always/
frequently
OK
old/to be old
once again
one
one cup
one day . . .
only
open/to be open
orange juice
order (food)
other
our/ours
pancake
parents
pass
peach
per cent
perhaps
person/people
photograph
pity that . . .
plan
please
pleased/to be pleased
plus
post-office
postcode
presents
problem
promise
public
pure silk
pure wool
quarter
quite/rather/
relatively
quite good/
quite well
railway station
rain/training
really
really?
receive
recently
remember
yī běi
yóu yì tiān . . .
zhìyóu
kāi
chéngzǐ zhī
diàn cái
dīn/biède
wòmènde
bìng
fúmú
di
táozi
bāfènzhī
yēsū
rén
zhàozi
kē
dāsuàn
qìng
gāoxìng
jīa
yóu jù
yóubìān
fēn
wèntí
bāozhèng
gōngyòng
zhēn sí
chūn máo
xīn
fēn
zhū
zhú
zhāo
zhǎo
xià yakí
xià xiè
xià dài
xià xiè
xià yì zhàn
xià cì
róng
míng nián
hào/háokàn
yìjūjūsì nián
bù shì
bù dūi
bù yòng
mei wèntí
mián tiáo
bù
bù méi/méi yòu
bù cuò
bù hào zhào
nǎi
méi shéne
xiànzáì
hào má/cí/hào
diàn
shí yùè
dàng guān
bàngòngshì
cháng
hào de
lào/dà
zài
yào
zǎoshàng
zuì
mā má
xiànsheng
tái tāi
bǐ xǐ
míng zì
fā jù
kuài
xiǎn
xià ge
gē bǐ
xià yì zhàn
xià cì
míng nián
hào/háokàn
yìjūjūsì nián
bù shì
bù dūi
bù yòng
mei wèntí
mián tiáo
bù
bù méi/méi yòu
bù cuò
bù hào zhào
nǎi
méi shéne
xiànzáì
hào má/cí/hào
diàn
shí yùè
dàng guān
bàngòngshì
cháng
hào de
lào/dà
zài
yào
zǎoshàng
zuì
mā má
xiànsheng
tái tāi
bǐ xǐ
míng zì
fā jù
kuài
xiǎn
xià ge
gē bǐ
xià yì zhàn
xià cì
míng nián
hào/háokàn
yìjūjūsì nián
bù shì
bù dūi
bù yòng
mei wèntí
mián tiáo
bù
bù méi/méi yòu
bù cuò
bù hào zhào
nǎi
méi shéne
xiànzáì
hào má/cí/hào
diàn
shí yùè
dàng guān
bàngòngshì
cháng
hào de
lào/dà
zài
yào
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>repair</td>
<td>修理 (xiū)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>报告 (bàogào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>require/need</td>
<td>需要 (xu yào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest/take</td>
<td>休息 (xiūxì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time off</td>
<td>业余 (yú yì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>工作 (gōngzuò)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>餐馆 (cānguǎn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant/</td>
<td>餐厅 (cāntīng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dining-room</td>
<td>餐厅 (cāntīng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retired/be</td>
<td>退休 (tuí xiū)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return</td>
<td>回来 (huí lái)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return (the</td>
<td>回来 (huí lái)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change)</td>
<td>回来 (huí lái)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return/to</td>
<td>回来 (huí lái)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give back</td>
<td>回来 (huí lái)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>骑 (qí)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right/by the</td>
<td>右 (yòu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td>路 (lù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roast</td>
<td>烤 (kǎo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td>房间 (fáng jiān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>route/road</td>
<td>路 (lù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>相同 (xiāng tíng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sauce</td>
<td>酱 (jiàng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>围巾 (wéi jīn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scenery</td>
<td>风景 (fēng jǐng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seafood</td>
<td>海鲜 (hǎi xiān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>season</td>
<td>季节 (jì jié)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasonal</td>
<td>季节 (jì jié)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vegetables</td>
<td>蔬菜 (shū cài)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary/middle</td>
<td>中学 (zhōng xué)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>学校 (xué xiào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secretary</td>
<td>秘书 (mì shū)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see to visit/to watch/to read</td>
<td>看 (kàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see to handle</td>
<td>看 (kàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see you again</td>
<td>再见 (zài jiàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see you later</td>
<td>再见 (zài jiàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>卖 (mài)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send for someone</td>
<td>为 (wèi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>七个 (qié)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several</td>
<td>几个 (jǐ ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she/her</td>
<td>她 (tā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>店 (diàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should/ought</td>
<td>应该 (yīng gāi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>旁边 (bàng biān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>真丝 (zhēn sī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk about/to talk about</td>
<td>讨论 (tǎo lùn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>口味 (kǒu wèi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasty</td>
<td>可口 (kě kǒu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>茶 (chá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>电话 (dē huà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>告诉 (gào su)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell/to narrate</td>
<td>告诉 (gào su)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>十 (shí)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank you</td>
<td>感谢 (gǎn xiè)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>那 (nà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that is</td>
<td>那个 (nà gé)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that woman</td>
<td>那个女子 (nà ge niǔ zi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the first time/for the first time</td>
<td>首次 (shǒu cì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the following day</td>
<td>下次 (xià cì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Great Wall</td>
<td>长城 (cháng chéng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the large one/the big one</td>
<td>大 (dà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the last</td>
<td>最后 (zuì hòu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the only thing is...</td>
<td>只... (zhǐ...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the small one</td>
<td>小 (xiǎo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the trip to there</td>
<td>去... (qù...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these</td>
<td>这些 (zhè xiē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing/matter things</td>
<td>这些 (zhè xiē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think/feel</td>
<td>感觉 (gǎn jué)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirty-two</td>
<td>三十二 (sān shí èr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>这个 (zhè ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this evening/tonight</td>
<td>当天 (dāng tiān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this matter</td>
<td>这件事 (zhè shì jiàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this time</td>
<td>这天 (zhè tiān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this weekend</td>
<td>这个周末 (zhè gè zuò wěi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this year</td>
<td>这年 (zhè nián)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>票 (piào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket office</td>
<td>票务 (piào wù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>领带 (lǐng dài)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>时间 (shí jiān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to/for</td>
<td>为了 (wèi le)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be able to see</td>
<td>能够 (néng guò)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see</td>
<td>看 (kàn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to/shaan</td>
<td>赏 (shǎn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to/for</td>
<td>为 (wèi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be angry/to be cross</td>
<td>生气 (shēng qì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be at/to be in</td>
<td>脱 (tuō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be away/to go away</td>
<td>脱 (tuō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be beautiful/beautiful</td>
<td>美丽 (měi lì)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be big/to be large</td>
<td>大 (dà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be clear/clearly</td>
<td>清楚 (qīng chǔ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be closed/to close</td>
<td>关 (guān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be cold/cold</td>
<td>冷 (lěng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be compared with</td>
<td>比 (bǐ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be fast/to be friendly</td>
<td>美 (měi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be friendly</td>
<td>友好 (yǒu hào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be good/to be well/to be fine</td>
<td>好 (hǎo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be hot/hot</td>
<td>热 (rè)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be interesting</td>
<td>有兴趣 (yǒu qù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be interesting</td>
<td>有兴趣 (yǒu qù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be magnificent</td>
<td>长城 (cháng chéng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be married</td>
<td>婚姻 (hūn yīn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be noisy</td>
<td>喧闹 (xuān nào)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be OK/to be well</td>
<td>好 (hǎo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be open/to open</td>
<td>开 (kāi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be received by</td>
<td>收 (shōu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be romantic</td>
<td>浪漫 (làng màn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be romantic</td>
<td>浪漫 (làng màn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be sold out</td>
<td>卖 (mài)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be successful</td>
<td>成功 (chéng gōng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be the same</td>
<td>相同 (xiāng tíng)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to be tired
be to/to be for
be believe
borrow
today
tofu
toilet
tomorrow
travel
hotel guide
trade
traffic light
train
ticket
tram/streetcar
Tuesday
turn
twenty
twenty-one
two
understand
university
student
until/up to
urgent matter
use
vacant
various kinds
very
very much
walk
wallet/purse
want
us/us
we (colloquial term)
wear
wedding
week
weekend
welcome
well

What a coincidence! What a shame!
What about you? And you? What's the matter?
when when/while where where/whereabouts
whereabout/what place which who
Who is it speaking?
whoops! why why
who

Zhen kéi! Nín ne?

Zénme huí shì?

Nǐ jù duí le.
Appendix A
Useful signs

The characters introduced in the book are simplified characters. In this appendix, complex characters (traditional form) are placed alongside their simplified versions wherever they differ from their simplified version. This appendix consists of those character signs that are introduced at the end of each lesson in the book and some other useful signs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simplified form</th>
<th>Complex form</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>北京</td>
<td>Beijing</td>
<td>xishoujian</td>
<td>toilet</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>男</td>
<td>Men's</td>
<td>gongyongzhuan</td>
<td>public telephone</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>女</td>
<td>Ladies'</td>
<td>huochezhan</td>
<td>railway station</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>饭店</td>
<td>hotel</td>
<td>shoupiaochu</td>
<td>ticket office</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐厅</td>
<td>dining-room</td>
<td>chengzhudian</td>
<td>bus station</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>旅游局</td>
<td>tourist bureau</td>
<td>xianzai</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>商店</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>xiangan</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>银行</td>
<td>bank</td>
<td>Yingguo</td>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>邮局</td>
<td>post-office</td>
<td>Meiguo</td>
<td>America</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>menu</td>
<td>Gugong</td>
<td>Forbidden City</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐馆</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>Tianfan</td>
<td>Temple of Heaven</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>toilet</td>
<td>Jinkou</td>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simplified form</th>
<th>Complex form</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>上海</td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
<td>Shanghaidian</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>西安</td>
<td>Xi'an</td>
<td>Guangdong</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>广州</td>
<td>Guangzhou</td>
<td>Guandong</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长城</td>
<td>Changcheng</td>
<td>Changcheng</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>香港</td>
<td>Xianggang</td>
<td>Xianggang</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>台湾</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>英国</td>
<td>Yingguo</td>
<td>Yingguo</td>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>美国</td>
<td>Meiguo</td>
<td>Meiguo</td>
<td>America</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>故宫</td>
<td>Gugong</td>
<td>Gugong</td>
<td>Forbidden City</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>天坛</td>
<td>Tianfan</td>
<td>Tianfan</td>
<td>Temple of Heaven</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>旅行社</td>
<td>Jinxingshe</td>
<td>Jinxingshe</td>
<td>travel agency</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>进口</td>
<td>Jinkou</td>
<td>Jinkou</td>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simplified form</td>
<td>Complex form</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入口</td>
<td>rūkǒu</td>
<td>entrance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出口</td>
<td>chūkǒu</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>问讯处</td>
<td>wènxùn chu</td>
<td>information/enquiry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>行李寄存处</td>
<td>xínglǐ jícún chǔ</td>
<td>left-luggage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>蔬菜</td>
<td>shūcài</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>肉</td>
<td>ròu</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>冷饮</td>
<td>lèngyǐn</td>
<td>cold drinks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>素菜馆</td>
<td>sūcài guǎn</td>
<td>vegetarian restaurant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>美元</td>
<td>měi yuán</td>
<td>US dollars (US$)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>英镑</td>
<td>yìng bàng</td>
<td>sterling (£)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>医院</td>
<td>yīyuàn</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>警察局</td>
<td>jǐngchá jú</td>
<td>police station</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>理发店</td>
<td>lǐfà diàn</td>
<td>barber shop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>发廊</td>
<td>fāláng</td>
<td>hairdresser</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>博物馆</td>
<td>bówùguǎn</td>
<td>museum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出租车</td>
<td>chūzhūché</td>
<td>taxi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>书店</td>
<td>shùdiàn</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>图书馆</td>
<td>tíshūguǎn</td>
<td>library</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电影院</td>
<td>diànyǐngyuàn</td>
<td>cinema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>服装店</td>
<td>fúhuàng diàn</td>
<td>clothes shop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>药店</td>
<td>yàodiàn</td>
<td>chemist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>请勿拍照</td>
<td>qǐng wù pái zhào</td>
<td>no photographs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>请勿吸烟</td>
<td>qǐng wù xī yàn</td>
<td>no smoking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix B
### Additional useful expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese (in pinyin)</th>
<th>Chinese (in character)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aeroplane</td>
<td>fēijī</td>
<td>飞机</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>xíngli</td>
<td>行李</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boiled water</td>
<td>kāi shuǐ</td>
<td>开水</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese characters</td>
<td>hàn zì</td>
<td>汉字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chopsticks</td>
<td>kuài zǐ</td>
<td>筷子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold water</td>
<td>liáng shuǐ</td>
<td>凉水</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complex characters</td>
<td>fán tì zì</td>
<td>繁体字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>guān xi</td>
<td>关系</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough</td>
<td>kē sōu</td>
<td>咳嗽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diarrhoea</td>
<td>lā dū zì</td>
<td>拉肚子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>róng yì</td>
<td>容易</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>fā shào</td>
<td>发烧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu</td>
<td>gān máo</td>
<td>感冒</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreigner</td>
<td>wàiguó rén</td>
<td>外国人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headache</td>
<td>tóu tèng</td>
<td>头疼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese (in pinyin)</th>
<th>Chinese (in character)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm ill.</td>
<td>Wō bìng le.</td>
<td>我病了</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice</td>
<td>bīng</td>
<td>冰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice-cream</td>
<td>bǐng jīng</td>
<td>冰激凌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>zá zhì</td>
<td>杂志</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>bāo zhì</td>
<td>报纸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas Chinese</td>
<td>huá qiáo</td>
<td>华侨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peking Opera</td>
<td>jīng jù</td>
<td>京剧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post a letter</td>
<td>jì xīn</td>
<td>寄信</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postcard</td>
<td>míng xin piàn</td>
<td>明信片</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see a doctor</td>
<td>kàn yīshēng/kàn dà fū</td>
<td>看医生/看大夫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send a parcel</td>
<td>jī bāo guō</td>
<td>寄包裹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplified characters</td>
<td>jiān tì zì</td>
<td>简体字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach-ache</td>
<td>dù zì tēng</td>
<td>肚子疼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>qǐ fēi</td>
<td>起飞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothache</td>
<td>yá tēng</td>
<td>牙疼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourist guide</td>
<td>dǎo yóu</td>
<td>导游</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work unit</td>
<td>dān wèi</td>
<td>单位</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Appendix C

Table of the combinations of the initials and finals in Putonghua

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>o</th>
<th>e</th>
<th>er</th>
<th>ai</th>
<th>ao</th>
<th>ou</th>
<th>an</th>
<th>en</th>
<th>ang</th>
<th>eng</th>
<th>ong</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>ia</th>
<th>lao</th>
<th>le</th>
<th>ia (i)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ao</td>
<td>ou</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>eng</td>
<td>ong</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yao</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>bei</td>
<td>bei</td>
<td>hao</td>
<td>ban</td>
<td>ben</td>
<td>hang</td>
<td>heng</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>biao</td>
<td>bie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>po</td>
<td>pai</td>
<td>pei</td>
<td>pao</td>
<td>pau</td>
<td>pan</td>
<td>pang</td>
<td>peng</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>piao</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>mei</td>
<td>mao</td>
<td>mou</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>nian</td>
<td>mian</td>
<td>mang</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>miao</td>
<td>mie</td>
<td>miu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>lei</td>
<td>lou</td>
<td>fan</td>
<td>fen</td>
<td>fang</td>
<td>feng</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td>fiao</td>
<td>fie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dou</td>
<td>dan</td>
<td>dian</td>
<td>di</td>
<td>dong</td>
<td>din</td>
<td>ding</td>
<td>du</td>
<td>dao</td>
<td>chai</td>
<td>chuan</td>
<td>dun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tai</td>
<td>tao</td>
<td>tan</td>
<td>tang</td>
<td>tong</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>tao</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>nei</td>
<td>nai</td>
<td>nia</td>
<td>nian</td>
<td>nong</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>niao</td>
<td>nie</td>
<td>nü</td>
<td>nüe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>le</td>
<td>lei</td>
<td>liao</td>
<td>lou</td>
<td>lan</td>
<td>lang</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>lao</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>zai</td>
<td>zao</td>
<td>zhou</td>
<td>zhan</td>
<td>zheng</td>
<td>zhong</td>
<td>zi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ca</td>
<td>ce</td>
<td>cai</td>
<td>cao</td>
<td>cai</td>
<td>ceng</td>
<td>cong</td>
<td>ci</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>sai</td>
<td>siao</td>
<td>sou</td>
<td>san</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>song</td>
<td>si</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zh</td>
<td>zha</td>
<td>zhe</td>
<td>zhai</td>
<td>zhao</td>
<td>zhou</td>
<td>zhan</td>
<td>zheng</td>
<td>zhong</td>
<td>zhi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>che</td>
<td>chai</td>
<td>chao</td>
<td>chuan</td>
<td>cheng</td>
<td>chong</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>sha</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>shai</td>
<td>shao</td>
<td>shuan</td>
<td>sheng</td>
<td>shang</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>rai</td>
<td>rao</td>
<td>ren</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rong</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>qie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>xie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 stands for 'initial'; F stands for 'final'.
* See p. 4 for pronunciation.

## Pronunciation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>o</th>
<th>e</th>
<th>er</th>
<th>ai</th>
<th>ao</th>
<th>ou</th>
<th>an</th>
<th>en</th>
<th>ang</th>
<th>eng</th>
<th>ong</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>ia</th>
<th>lao</th>
<th>le</th>
<th>ia (i)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yin</td>
<td>yin</td>
<td>yang</td>
<td>yang</td>
<td>yong</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>wu</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wu</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wu</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td>wai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bian</td>
<td>bia</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>eng</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pian</td>
<td>pian</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>eng</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mian</td>
<td>mian</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>eng</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 stands for 'initial'; F stands for 'final'.
* See p. 4 for pronunciation.
Appendix D

English translation to dialogues after Lesson 6

Lesson 6

Dialogue 1: What day is it today?

T: What day is it today?
PA: Today is Tuesday.
T: How many days are there in a week?
PB: There are seven days in a week.
T: How many months are there in a year?
PC: There are twelve months in a year.
T: What's tomorrow's date?
PD: Tomorrow is 18th January 1994.
T: How many seasons are there in a year and what are they?
PE: Four seasons, and they are spring, summer, autumn and winter.

Dialogue 2: When . . . ?

M: Is it cold in Beijing in the winter?
L: Extremely cold. It often snows.
M: How about the summer?
L: July and August are very hot.
M: What is the best season?
L: Autumn, around October. Why, are you planning to go to Beijing?
M: Yes
L: When?
M: As you've said that October is best, I'll go in October next year.
L: Are you going there to travel or to work?
M: Travel plus work.
L: How long are you going for?

M: Travelling for two weeks and working for three days. Altogether about three weeks.

Lesson 7

Dialogue 1: How much is it?

S: Hello. What would you like to buy?
A: I'd like to buy some fruit.
S: Have a look. We've got fresh strawberries, Hainan Island bananas and various kinds of apples.
A: What are these?
S: Lychees.
A: How much are they per jin?
S: Five kuai and eight mao.
A: I'll have one jin of lychees. How much are strawberries?
S: Three kuai and nine fen per jin.
A: I'll have half a jin of strawberries. Do you have peaches?
S: No, sorry. Anything else?
A: No, thank you.
S: Altogether seven kuai three mao and six fen.
A: Here are ten kuai.
S: OK. Here is your change – two kuai six mao and four fen.
A: Thanks.

Dialogue 2: It's too expensive

D: Xiao Fan, are shops closed on Sundays?
F: No. All the shops, banks and post-offices are open. Why, do you want to do some shopping?
D: Yes. I'd like to buy several silk scarves for my wife, some presents for the kids and friends.
F: That's not difficult. I can take you to the department store.
D: Miss, how much is this silk tie?
S: Two hundred and fifty yuan for one.
D: It's too expensive.
S: Two hundred yuan, is that OK?
D: How about three hundred and fifty yuan for two?
S: All right, all right.
D: I'll take it.
Lesson 8

Dialogue 1: Which is better?

P: Xiao Liu, these two jumpers, which one do you think is better?
L: I think the green one is better than the yellow one. Green suits you quite well.
P: OK. I'll take your advice.
P: Damn! I forgot to bring my wallet. Xiao Liu, could you lend me some money?
L: No problem. How much do you need?
P: Thirty yuan, is that OK?
L: Yes. Is it enough?
P: Yes, it is.
L: Here you are.
P: Thanks a lot. I'll definitely return the money tomorrow.
L: There's no hurry. Shall we go and have a look in the bookshop? I'd like to buy a couple of books.
P: OK.

Dialogue 2: It's a bargain

J: Sorry. I'm late.
Y: That's all right. I've just arrived.
J: I finished work early today and went to have a look-around in the street market.
Y: Is there any good stuff?
J: Yes, a lot. Shame I didn't have enough money with me. I bought er ... how do you say ‘jumper’ in Chinese?
Y: Maoyi.
J: Right. I bought a jumper.
Y: Let me have a look. ( . . . ) Really good. Is it pure wool?
J: No. It contains 80 per cent wool.
Y: It feels very comfortable. How much is it?
J: Over fifty yuan.
Y: It's really inexpensive. A real bargain. I like this colour very much. Are there any more of those left?
J: Dark red is sold out. This was the last one. But, there are many other nice colours.
Y: I'm not working tomorrow. I'll find some time to go and have a look.

Lesson 9

Dialogue 1: Ready to order?

W: Good evening! How many of you?
L: Three.
W: Follow me please.
W: Sit down, please. What would you like to drink first?
D: I'd like to have a Qingdao beer.
L: Same for me.
W: What would you like to drink, Miss?
J: A glass of orange juice.
W: OK. Please have a look at the menu.
W: Ready to order?
L: Yes. I'll order first. One seafood soup and one beef with fried noodles.
W: What about you, sir?
D: One hot and sour tofu soup, one diced chicken with seasonal vegetables and two liang of small steamed bread with fillings. I'm starving.
W: And you, Miss?
J: I'd like to have a small plate of deep-fried king-prawns, one sweet and sour fish and one boiled rice.
W: Alright. Please wait for a while.

Dialogue 2: Have you ever had roast duck?

Q: Have you had Beijing roast duck?
X: No, I haven't.
Q: Really. In that case, you've got to give it a taste. Are you free tonight?
X: Yes, I am.
Q: Then, I'm inviting you to have roast duck tonight. How does that sound?
X: Wonderful. Which restaurant are we going to?
Q: How about the Beijing Roast Duck Restaurant?
X: Super!
X: You were so right. It's delicious.
Q: I'm so pleased you like the roast duck. Have some more.
X: OK. Please pass me the sauce.
Q: Are there enough pancakes?
X: Enough for me. I'm nearly full. Ask for some more if you want more pancakes.
Q: In fact I'm already full. I eat faster than you do.

Lesson 10

Dialogue 1: Where's the toilet?

(a) Inside a hotel
You: Where is the toilet, please?
Chinese: On the left of the dining-room.

(b) In the street
You: Is there a public telephone nearby?
Chinese: I'm afraid not. Can you see the traffic light ahead?
You: Yes, I can.
Chinese: When you get to the traffic light, turn right. I remember there is one there.

(c) In the street
You: Could you tell me which bus to take to go to the Railway Station?
Chinese: No need to take the bus. It takes ten minutes to walk there.
You: How do I get there?
Chinese: Turn east at the first traffic light.

Lesson 11

Dialogue 1: Fares, please!

B: Fares, please. Anybody?
A: Yes, I'd like a ticket to the zoo.
B: This bus is not going to the zoo.
A: What? Have I got on the wrong bus?
B: Don't worry. You get off at the next stop and change for Tram No. 18.
A: Sorry, I didn't hear it clearly. Please speak slowly.
B: You get off at the next stop and change for Tram No. 18.
A: Thank you. In that case, one ticket please. How much is it?
B: One mao.
P: I happen to change for No. 18. Please come with me.
A: Thank you very much.

Dialogue 2: Buying train tickets

C: Is this the ticket office?
T: Yes, it is.
C: I'd like to get a train ticket to Guilin.
T: When are you leaving?
C: Next Wednesday, that is 4th June.
T: Which number train to you plan to take?
C: I'm not sure. Ideally, round six o'clock in the evening.
T: How about No. 81? It departs at nineteen forty-five.
C: When does it arrive at Guilin?
T: It arrives at sixteen twenty the following day.
C: Good timing. I'll get a ticket for this train.
T: Would you like a hard-sleeper or soft-sleeper?
C: I don't understand.
T: A hard-sleeper is fifty yuan cheaper than a soft-sleeper, but not as comfortable.
C: I'll have one hard-sleeper.
Lesson 12

Dialogue 1: Any vacancies?

J: Do you have any vacancies please?
R: It depends. Do you want a single room or double room?
J: Single room, please.
R: How many days are you staying?
J: Three days.
R: Let me check. ... What good luck! There is one room available.
J: Do single rooms have bathrooms?
R: Yes, they do.
J: How much is it per night?
R: Two hundred and thirty yuan.
J: I'll take it.
R: Here is the key to your room. Your room is on the second floor.

Dialogue 2: The light is not working

D: Good morning. Did you sleep well last night?
J: To be honest. I didn't sleep well.
D: What's the matter?
J: Last night the room next door was very noisy all the time until early this morning.
D: Many apologies. I'll see to this matter.
J: Thanks. Oh, right, a light in my room is not working.
D: Really? I'll definitely send someone to fix it. Any other problems?
J: Not for the moment. See you later.

Lesson 13

Dialogue 1: Hello

A: Hello, could you get Li Man for me please?
L: I AM Li Man. Who is speaking?
A: It's Alan, Alan from Britain.
L: Really? When did you get here? How come I didn't know anything about it?

Lesson 14

Dialogue 1: It's raining

Y: Is this your first time in Taiwan?
P: No. We come to Taiwan almost every year. Last year, we were here twice.
Y: Really? Why?
P: The first time, we came for my wife's younger sister's wedding. And the second time, it was for the Spring Festival.
Y: In that case, you wife must be Taiwanese, is that so?
P: Yes, she is.
Y: How did you get to know each other?
P: It's a long story. Ten years ago, she went to the States for her university education and we were classmates. One day...
Dialogue 2: Which place do you like most?

A: Hi, Graham. So nice to see you. Come on in. Please take a seat.
G: OK. Are you well, Ailin?
A: Quite well, thank you. What would you like to drink?
G: Chinese tea, please.
A: Talking about China, how was your trip to China?
G: Very successful.
A: Which cities did you go to?
G: Beijing, Shanghai, Si'an, Guilin and Guangzhou.
A: Which place did you like most?
G: It's a very difficult question to answer. I liked Guilin very much. The scenery there is beautiful. The locals are very friendly. It's very interesting to talk to them.
A: I haven't been to Guilin yet. I'll definitely go there next time. What do you think of Guangzhou?
G: I don't like Guangzhou that much. Too many people there, and also too hot.
A: I don't like Guangzhou either. I've heard that the Great Wall is very grandiose. Is that right?
G: Yes, it is. It's magnificent. I took a lot of photos . . .

Lesson 15

Text: I promise

Dear Xiaomei:
Hi!
I've received your letter. I'm so pleased that you like your new job. Everything is fine with me, except that I'm too busy writing a report. Every morning I've been up at six thirty and can't go to bed until twelve at night. I've got to finish this report by Friday. I know I haven't written to you for a long time. Please don't be cross with me. When I have some time off this weekend, I will definitely write you a long letter. I promise.

Good friend,
Elena

26.1.94

Index to grammar and cultural notes

The number in each entry refers to the lesson(s) where that entry occurs

adjectives
demonstrative adjectives, 3
place names used as adjectives, 7
possessive adjectives, 1
verb-adjectives 1
verb-adjectives + sì le, 9
verbs used as adjectives, 7
affirmative sentences + xǐng má?/
   hào ma?, etc., 4
asking the price, 7
   ba, 1
   bǎifènzhì, 8
   bì, 8
   bìe, 11
   bijiào, 8
   bù, 1
   bù cuò, 11
   bù hǎo + verb, 13
chang / changchang, 6
chi báo le, 9
Chinese dishes, 9
chòu kǒng, 8
colours, 8
common drinks, 9
comparatives, 8, 11
conditional sentences, 9
cóng . . . lái, 13
dài, 8
dài . . . qǔ/lái, 7
dào (until), 12
days of the week, 6
dé
changing adjectives to nouns by adding de, 3, 6
de in kàn de jiàn, 10
linking two nouns with de, 3
more on the linking word de, 13
omission of de, 5, 13, 14
using de to link a verb or verb-adjective with an adverb, 9
using de to link a verbal phrase with a noun, 11
... de shíhou, 15
déi, 9
déng, 9
dí, 9
dí . . . cí, 14
diǎn cái, 9
diǎn(r), 14
difference between
dít and wǎn, 8
dàyuè and zuò yòu, 6
duōshǎo and jǐ, 7
fēn and fēnzhōng, 4
gōu and gōu de, 8
hui and neng, 10
huoché and lièché, 11
jianmiàn and jiándào, 3
jin qu and jin lāi, 14
lái and dào, 8
lái and qù, 14
xià ge and xià yì ..., 11
xiäoshí and dián, 10
xìn, tài xìn and qūxìn, 15
yào and xiàng, 7
different terms for ‘last’, ‘next’ and ‘this’, 15
directional words qù and lāi, 7, 10
dōu, 5, 14
duí, 12
duóbìqi, 14
duō, 8
duō chí yǐxiè, 9
duō jǐ, 6
duō shǎo qián yì tiān?, 12
fàn, 14
foreign names, 5
gānghào, 11
gé (usage before years, months and weeks), 6
géi, 5, 13
géi ... mǎi ..., 7
gèn, 9
gòu, 8
grammar words (particles), 2, 3, 9, 14, 15
greetings, 1
guǎng, 8
guo (grammar word), 9
hái, 6
hào jiū bù jiàn, 3
hè, 6
hén, 8
hù, 15
... huái le, 12
hūn, 8
huànyíng, 1
huí, 2
huí ... de, 5
jí, 13
jiào, 2
used to ask the time, 4
used to ask about small quantities of things, 5
used to ask the date and the day, 6
used to ask the price, 7
used to mean ‘several’, 7
used to ask which bus/train to take, 10
jí, 10
jí ‘to lend’, 8
‘to borrow’, 10
jí, 13
jí, 9
jírăn ... jíu ..., 6
jíu, 3
jíu ... le, 10
kǎimén, 4
kàn, 5
kàn qíngkuàng, 12
kànshàngqu, 2
kéyí, 4
kǒng fāngjiǎn, 12
kuài (position of), 4
le
indicating a past action, 2, 3
indicating a guess, 14
indicating a change of state, 14
lì, 12
liàng (alternative of ěr), 3
lǐndào, 5
ma
used to form yes/no questions, 1
responding to questions ended with ma, 1
mái, 7
mái, 7
mái dōngxi, 7
máng, 3
measure words
usage, 3, 5, 6
use of wèi, 9, 13
use of píng, 9
use of zhàng and liàng, 11
use of jiàn and jiàn, 12
use of táo, 7
měi, 14
měi wéntí, 8
měi yǒu, 3
měi yǒu shíjiàn, 5
months of the year, 6
more dish names and vegetarian dishes, 9
nà, 2
nà jǐ ..., 14
nàr, 10
nàlǐ, 2
names of countries and their people, 2
names and forms of address, 1
nàr, 3
negate yǒu yìsi, 5
negation words, 1, 3
ní duō dà le?, 2
Nǐ gàn shéme gōngzuò?, 5
Nǐ juédé ... zěme yàng?, 14
nǐ shuō ..., 8
Nǐ tài hào le, 7
noun phrases (shortening of), 10, 12
numbers
0–99, 2
ordinal numbers, 10
ordinal numbers with measure words, 12
on Chinese buses, 11
prepositions
no prepositions in front of time phrases, 6
position of prepositions, 5, 7
pronouns
demonstrative pronouns nà and zhè, 3
omission of personal pronouns, 3
personal pronouns, 1
possessive pronouns, 1
qì, 10
qián, 14
qīng
(please), 1, 14
(to invite), 9
qīng fēng hǎo, 13
Qīng wèn, ...? Qīng wèn ... hǎo, 5
qīngkuàng, 5
question words (position of), 2, 3
rang, 12
rén tài duō, 14
rénshi, 2
rúguò ... dehuà, 9
shàng in shàng bàn, 5, 8
shéi, 3
shéme
used as question word, 2
used as pronoun, 3, 8
shéme difang, 13
shénme shihou,
used as question word, 6
used in statements, 13

shì
used to mean 'to be', 1
used for emphatic purpose, 3
used at the beginning of sentences, 13

shì . . . de, 13
shì bù shì . . . ?, 4, 5
showing concern over one's parents, 5

suǒyǒu de . . . dòu . . . , 7
tái . . . le, 1
tāitāi, 5
telephone expressions, 12
tell the time, 4
time-related phrases (position of), 3
ing, 8
titles, 1, 5, 7
tóng, 13
topic structure, 2, 14

unit of weight, 7, 9

verbs
add wàn after some verbs, 13
omission of the second syllable in a two-syllable verb, 4
repetition of one-syllable verbs, 8
two verbs in one sentence, 1
verbs used to articulate an idea expressed in English with a preposition, 14

wàn (used after some verbs), 13
wàng, 8
wàng . . . guài, 10
ways of referring to different languages, 2

wèi (used on the phone), 13
wǒ gōu le, 9
wǒ yào le, 7
wǒ yě yìyíng, 9
wǒ yùqǐ hǎi hǎo, 15
writing a letter, 15
writing an envelope, 15

xià bān, 8
xiāngxìn, 10
xiǎnshēng, 1, 5
xiàojie, 7
xiào, 10

yǎo, 10
yǎo, 13

yě
position of yě, 1
negative sentences with yě, 14

year and date, 6
yes/no questions
formed by adding ma, 1
formed by the pattern 'subject + verb + bù + repetition of the verb', 4

yī (omission of), 8
yīdiǎn, 2
yījīng . . . le, 4
yǐxià, 3
yǐzhī, 15
yǒu, 4, 10
yǒu biān, 10
yǒu kòng, 9
yǒu méi yǒu, 7
yǒu rén . . . , 11
yǒu shíjiān, 5

zài, 5
zài . . . zhì qián, 15
zhènme, 6, 8
zhènme huì shì?, 12
zhènme yàng?, 3
Zhōngshān Dàxué, 10
zìyóu shìchǎng, 8
zóu, 11
zū, 6
zuò, 14
zuòbiān, 10
zuòyǒu, 2